



One NorthEast

DURHAM CATHEDRAL AND CASTLE
WORLD HERITAGE SITE
MANAGEMENT PLAN



November 2006

CHRIS BLANDFORD ASSOCIATES

Environment Landscape Planning

One NorthEast

**DURHAM CATHEDRAL AND CASTLE
WORLD HERITAGE SITE
MANAGEMENT PLAN**

Approved By: Dominic Watkins

Signed: _____

Position: Director

Date: 9 November 2006

CHRIS BLANDFORD ASSOCIATES

Environment Landscape Planning

CONTENTS

Foreword

Acknowledgements

Executive Summary

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 An Introduction to World Heritage

1.2 The Need for a WHS Management Plan

1.3 Status and Role of the Plan

1.4 Preparation of the Plan

1.5 Structure of the Plan

2.0 DESCRIPTION OF THE SITE

2.1 Location and Extent of the WHS

2.2 Proposed Boundary Changes to the Original Nomination

2.3 Historic Development of the World Heritage Site

2.4 Description of the WHS and its Environs

2.5 Intangible Values

2.6 Collections

2.7 Management and Ownership of the WHS

2.8 Planning and Policy Framework

2.9 Other Relevant Plans and Studies

3.0 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE SITE

3.1 Introduction

3.2 Statement of Significance

3.3 Assessment of the Wider Value of the Site

4.0 MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES

4.1 Introduction

4.2 Vision and Key Principles

4.3 Theme 1: Managing the World Heritage Site and its Setting

4.4 Theme 2: Conserving the Site and its Significances

4.5 Theme 3: Using the Site

4.6 Theme 4: Enhancing Understanding of the Site

4.7 Theme 5: Improving Access and Sustainable Transport

- 5.0 IMPLEMENTATION, MONITORING AND REVIEW
- 5.1 Implementing the Plan in Partnership
- 5.2 Action Plan
- 5.3 Monitoring and Review

APPENDICES

- Appendix 1 - Members of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group
- Appendix 2 - Consultation Process
- Appendix 3 - Management Structures of the WHS Managing Bodies
- Appendix 4 - Review of the WHS Boundary
- Appendix 5 - Schedule of Designated Assets in the WHS
- Appendix 6 - Castle and Cathedral Timeline
- Appendix 7 - The Visitor and Marketing Strategy
- Appendix 8 - Durham Riverbanks Management Plan Projects at 2004
- Appendix 9 - Select Bibliography
- Appendix 10 – Local Development Framework

FIGURES

- 2.1 Inscribed WHS Boundary (1986) and Proposed Addition to the WHS (2004)
- 2.2 Location of the WHS
- 2.3 Ownership of the WHS
- 2.4 Historic Development of Durham
- 2.5 Component Areas of the WHS and its Immediate Environs
- 2.6 County Durham Landscape Character Areas
- 2.7 Listed Buildings and Scheduled Monuments
- 2.8 Durham (City Centre) Conservation Area

FOREWORD

Through the 1972 World Heritage Convention (WHC), the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) has identified the formal recognition and management of World Heritage Sites (WHS) as a key means of conserving the world's cultural and natural heritage for present and future generations. There are now 812 WHS in 135 countries, and this list is continually growing. The UK Government ratified the WHC in 1984, and in 1986 submitted their first nominations for UK WHS. The singular importance of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS within the global heritage was not only recognised in its inclusion on this first UK list, but also in its inscription by the World Heritage Committee onto the World Heritage List in the same year.

The effective management of WHS to conserve their international significance is a global challenge, and it is the legal responsibility of national governments under the WHC to ensure that this challenge is met. The UK government has prioritised WHS Management Plans as a key method of ensuring this conservation. Each UK WHS is charged with producing an agreed WHS Management Plan by the end of 2004.

The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan is therefore a local response to a national issue of global importance. This Plan seeks to conserve the architectural, townscape, religious, community and cultural significances of the WHS, and to provide a framework for ensuring access for all to the WHS. One NorthEast has funded the production of this vitally important Management Plan by the consultants, Chris Blandford Associates, and it has been produced under the close direction of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan Steering Group. The Steering Group comprises representatives from:

- The Department for Culture, Media and Sport
- Durham Cathedral Chapter
- City of Durham Council
- Durham County Council
- English Heritage
- ICOMOS-UK
- One NorthEast
- University of Durham
- St Chad's College
- St John's College

A wide range of organisations and individuals, including local interest groups and residents, have been consulted on helping to shape the WHS Management Plan and the future of the site itself. My thanks to all.

Margaret Fay
Chairman, One NorthEast

November 2006

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The WHS Management Plan was funded by One NorthEast and prepared on behalf of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan Steering Group by Chris Blandford Associates (CBA). The preparation of the plan was assisted by the WHS Management Plan Steering Group. The members of the Steering Group are listed in Appendix 1, and comprised representatives of:

- Department of Culture, Media and Sport
- Durham Cathedral Chapter
- City of Durham Council
- Durham County Council
- English Heritage
- ICOMOS-UK
- One NorthEast
- St John's College
- St Chad's College
- University of Durham

Thanks are also due to the members of the many institutions approached during the development of the Management Plan, who made available the information necessary for the development of the Plan. Particular thanks go to:

Adrian Beney	- Deputy Director, Development & Alumni Relations, University of Durham
Dennis Jones	- Stringer and Jones Architects
Christopher Downs	- Cathedral Architect
Norman Emery	- Resident Archaeologist, Durham Cathedral
John Jennings	- Director of Environmental Services, City of Durham Council
Fiona MacDonald	- County Archaeologist, Durham County Council
Lois Stuckenbruck	- Alumni/ae and Development Officer, St John's College
Maurice Tucker	- Master, University College
Alan Usher	- Estates Manager, St John's College
County Durham & Darlington Fire & Rescue Service	

The CBA team included:

Chris Blandford - Project Director
Dominic Watkins - Project Manager
Pippa Pemberton
Andrew Croft
Matthew Bright
Andy Buckley
Katherine Stronach
Alison MacDonald

and

Malcolm Buchanan - Colin Buchanan and Partners
Sian Johnson - Sian Johnson & Associates
Marc Mallam - Marc Mallam & Co.
Lesley Morisetti - Economic Research Associates
Julian Munby - Oxford Archaeology
Barry Stow - Barry Stow Architects

Chris Blandford Associates

November 2006

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

Built in the late 11th and early 12th centuries to house the relics of St Cuthbert, the evangelist of Northumbria and the Venerable Bede, the Cathedral attests to the importance of the early Benedictine monastic community and is the largest and best example of Norman architecture in England. The innovative audacity of its vaulting foreshadowed Gothic architecture. Behind the Cathedral is the Castle, an ancient Norman fortress which was the residence of the Prince-Bishops of Durham.

Introduction

World Heritage Sites are places or buildings of Outstanding Universal Value, recognised as constituting a world heritage 'for whose protection it is the duty of the international community as a whole to co-operate'. Once approved by the World Heritage Committee, WHS are inscribed onto the *World Heritage List*, which is maintained by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO). Through the 1972 World Heritage Convention (WHC), UNESCO has identified the formal recognition and management of WH Sites as a key means of conserving the world's cultural and natural heritage for present and future generations. There are now 812 WH Sites in 135 countries, and this list is continually growing.

The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS was inscribed onto the World Heritage List in 1986, after being nominated by the UK Government in its first list of potential WH Sites. This place on the UK's first list firmly locates Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS within the company of such prestigious and well-loved UK WH Sites as Stonehenge and Avebury, the Tower of London and the Giant's Causeway. The 1986 inscription of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS recognises the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site that results from its rich architectural legacy; its unique history as the defended home of the Prince-Bishops and its associations with key figures in the development of the Christian Church in England.

As one of the first UK inscriptions onto the World Heritage List, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS was not initially required to have a WHS Management Plan. However, it is now a government requirement that all the existing UK WH Sites agree a WHS Management Plan during 2004. The core aim of any WHS Management Plan is to ensure that the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site is sustained and conserved for the benefit of future generations.

This Management Plan describes the WHS, its Outstanding Universal Value and related significances, and analyses the issues facing the conservation and management of these. Through this understanding, a *Vision for the Future* of the WHS is outlined, along with *Key Principles* to be considered when working towards this Vision. The *Vision for the Future* of the WHS will be delivered through 27 *Objectives* and accompanying actions. The

entire Management Plan is to be monitored and reviewed every 6 years, and whilst the Vision for the Future and the Key Principles are intended to be long-lasting and to inform such future revisions of the Plan, the Objectives are expected to be short-lived and regularly reviewed.

Preparation of the Management Plan

The Management Plan has been prepared in broad accordance with the general procedures and requirements published in 1998 by ICCROM, ICOMOS and UNESCO as *Management Guidelines for World Cultural Heritage Sites*. The Plan also takes into account other documents including the Burra Charter (Australia ICOMOS 1999), the Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban Areas (ICOMOS 1987) and the Budapest Declaration on World Heritage (UNESCO 2002).

The first draft of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan was prepared by the Environmental Services Department of City of Durham Council. The WHS Management Plan Steering Group chair, One NorthEast, appointed the consultants Chris Blandford Associates to expand this draft into a full Consultation Draft of the WHS Management Plan. The preparation of the Consultation Draft and final WHS Management Plan has been closely guided by the *WHS Management Plan Steering Group* (members are listed in Appendix 1).

The Purpose of the Management Plan

The Management Plan has been developed to sustain and conserve the Outstanding Universal Value of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS. The overarching aim of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan is:

To describe an approach to the future management of Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS that will retain and strengthen the balance between conserving the historic environment, enhancing the local character and amenities of the WHS and surroundings with the need to keep the WHS in active and appropriate use, primarily as a religious, educational and residential working environment.

The Management Plan has the following key aims:

- To enable the definition of the significance of the WHS, in line with World Heritage Committee procedures;
- To maintain the quality and local distinctiveness of the WHS and its environment;
- To understand the processes and history of the WHS and use this knowledge to better inform plans for the current use and enjoyment of the Site for its resident religious and educational establishments, as a visitor attraction and as a local community resource; and for future uses and enjoyment of the Site;
- To set out guidelines for the use of land, buildings, landscape, townscape and cultural assets of the WHS, and include guidance for their sustainable conservation and maintenance;
- To recommend how the educational and interpretational potential of the Site could be realised further, to better inform the public as well as the formal users of the various buildings and functions housed within the WHS;
- To develop sustainable tourism and a positive visitor experience;
- To develop a programme of projects to implement the above, conserving and enhancing the WHS for all;
- To sustain the current uses of the WHS as the most appropriate way of maintaining and enhancing its significance.

Why is the Durham Cathedral and Castle World Heritage Site so Significant?

Once the home of the powerful Prince-Bishops, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is globally significant for the medieval architecture it contains, with the iconic Norman Cathedral and its associated Castle set within the surviving remains of their medieval bailey and defensive wall. Together this architecture creates an unforgettable skyline and a unique townscape, described by Pevsner as "*one of the great experiences of Europe*" and by The *Sunday Times* as "*one of the most sublime places on earth*".

The Outstanding Universal Values of Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS

In 1986, when the Site was inscribed on the World Heritage List, the Site was considered to be of Outstanding Universal Value for the following cultural elements:

- The Site's exceptional architecture demonstrating architectural innovation;
- The visual drama of the Cathedral and Castle on the peninsula and the associations of the Site with notions of romantic beauty;
- The physical expression of the spiritual and secular powers of the medieval Bishops Palatine that the defended complex provides;
- The relics and material culture of the three saints buried at the Site.

Since that time the understanding of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value has expanded, to also include:

- The continuity of use and ownership of the Site over the past 1000 years as a place of religious worship, learning and residence;
- The Site's role as a political statement of Norman power imposed upon a subjugate nation, as one of the country's most powerful symbols of the Norman Conquest of Britain;
- The importance of the site's archaeological remains, which are directly related to the Site's history and continuity of use over the past 1000 years;
- The cultural and religious traditions and historical memories associated with the relics of St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, and with the continuity of use and ownership of the Site over the past millennium.

On the basis of this expanded understanding, this Management Plan proposes a new Statement of Outstanding Universal Value (SOUV) for the site, which also contains new understandings developed since 1986. An outline summary of this proposed new Statement is provided below.

It is proposed that the State Party recommends to the World Heritage Committee (WHC) that the new SOUV for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS be formally recognised alongside the Justification for Inscription and Criteria as the definitive statement of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value. The proposed SOUV takes into account the boundary amendment proposed in Section 2.2, and could be presented to the World Heritage Committee along with the formal request for the proposed amendment to the Site's boundary (see Objective 2).

Outline Summary of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS

The WHS embodies important intangible values, including sanctuary, sainthood, pilgrimage and education. The WHS is also significant as being the resting place of three important figures of Christianity: St Cuthbert, the northern miracle worker; St Oswald, the warrior king and Christian martyr; and the Venerable Bede, the earliest English historian.

The architecture of the Cathedral represents the first globally important stage of the transition of Old World architecture from Romanesque to Gothic style. The high stone vaults of the Cathedral are one of the earliest examples of rib vaulting in Europe. They are also one of the most significant and most influential developments in the emergence of the new style. One of the most important features of the interior is the Neville Screen, which is noted as being one of the most aesthetically perfect examples of the emerging Perpendicular style. The combination of architecture, location and history of the Cathedral have led one commentator to express the commonly held sentiment that is formalised by the building's inscription on the World Heritage List: "*I unhesitatingly give Durham my vote for best cathedral on planet Earth*" (Bill Bryson).

As places of worship, residence and education, the Cathedral (incorporating the buildings of the medieval Priory) and the Castle have a well-documented history of continual use that stretches back over the past 1000 years. Together, the Cathedral and Castle within their defended walls on the top of the dramatic peninsula, manifest in no uncertain terms the physical, political, social and religious power of the Norman conquerors, and the medieval Prince-Bishops. This powerful skyline still dominates the City of Durham, and is a globally iconic image. The conversion of this defensive secular and religious peninsula landscape to a peaceful use, as 18th century terraced gardens and a 19th century University, has created a new layer which is significant in its own right, and which contributes to the internationally important story of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS.

The Related Significances of the WHS

In addition to the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site, the WHS also contains a number of related significances. These include its role as an important reservoir of valuable heritage skills, including the practical heritage conservation skills of skilled stone masonry and joinery. The WHS is a gathering point for the entire community. The Cathedral is informally held to be the spiritual capital of the North East as well as being a local place of worship. The Site also acts as a community resource for the holding of such regionally important events as the Miners' Gala. The WHS is also the home of a University of international importance, standing at the heart of the worldwide Diaspora of University of Durham alumni. The WHS enjoys a special place at the heart of these local, regional and international communities: a connection that they passionately express.

The Site's collections also add to the significance of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS, though moveable collections are not considered by the WHC to be part of the Outstanding Universal Value of a Site. The Site contains extensive collections of objects that reflect its history of patronage and secular and ecclesiastical power, as well as its role as home to the University. These collections are an intimate part of the history and story of the WHS.

Key Issues for the Management Plan

The WHS is managed by its three owners: The Cathedral Chapter, the University and St John's College, with key advice and technical support being provided by other members of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group, such as the City of Durham Council and English Heritage. However, due to the early inscription of the WHS, the managerial procedures and structures found at most other UK WHS have not yet been put in place in Durham. This lack of WHS-specific managerial structures is one of the main issues for the Management Plan. Therefore, some of the key outputs of this Management Plan will be the creation of a WHS Coordinating Committee; the consideration of the appointment of a WHS Officer; and the establishment of monitoring and review processes.

The key issue currently facing the Site is the condition of Durham Castle, which is included on the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' Register. The condition of the Castle was identified as the key issue facing the Site in the ICOMOS-UK 1995 *Monitoring Review of UK World Heritage Sites*, and until recently, due to funding difficulties, this issue was not resolved. The Castle is a fundamental component of the WHS's Outstanding Universal Value and various works have now been undertaken. The Castle remains on the register at this time but is under active reconsideration.

The Management Plan also addresses the issue of the WHS's boundary. As an early WHS inscription, the process of drawing WHS boundaries had not been refined when the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS was nominated. As a result the Site has been defined by a boundary that was drawn too tightly around its two main buildings, and which does not encapsulate, and therefore protect, some of the key significances of the WHS. The WHS Management Plan Steering Group has therefore decided to ask DCMS to recommend to the World Heritage Committee that the boundary be extended to include Palace Green. The success of this expansion and any need for future expansion will then be reviewed during the next revision of the Management Plan in 2011.

The only agreed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value is the Justification for Inscription contained in the nomination in 1986, together with the ICOMOS evaluation of that nomination. This is different from current practice under which the World Heritage Committee would agree a Statement of Outstanding Universal Value at the time of inscription. This is considered by the Steering Group to require amplification, and the Management Plan proposes that the State Party be invited to submit the revised proposed Statement of OUV contained in the Plan to the Committee for approval.

In addition to the above key issues, the other issues facing the site have been organised into five general themes:

- Managing the WHS;
- Conserving the Site and its Significances;
- Using the Site;
- Understanding the Site; and
- Enhancing Access and Sustainable Transport.

Vision for the Future

The Management Plan provides a Vision for the future of the WHS. The Vision is designed to sustain the WHS's Outstanding Universal Value and broader significance for the benefit of future generations, whilst maintaining its authenticity of function.

The World Heritage Site (WHS) is, and will continue to be, a holy and tranquil place that is inspiring and life enhancing for all who come into contact with it. Separated from the rest of the City by the peaceful river gorge, the Durham peninsula will continue to be a welcoming and atmospheric space with a strong sense of its own identity, providing sanctuary from the pressures of everyday-life.

The globally significant cultural assets and setting of the WHS will be conserved sensitively, to ensure that they are handed down from generation to generation in the best possible condition. All works at, and in the vicinity of, the WHS will continue to be of the highest quality, with the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS as their core aim.

The WHS is the iconic, beautiful and historic heart of the City, the Diocese and the University, and it will continue to be made accessible for all. The continued relevance of the WHS and all it contains will be ensured through the ongoing high level of community use of the WHS, whilst its Outstanding Universal Value will be celebrated and promoted through accessible and informative educational programmes.

As the social, religious, educational and geographical centre of a number of communities, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS will seek to use its globally significant status as a tool to benefit all who either live nearby or who use the site. Appropriate opportunities to benefit the communities that surround the peninsula, socially, spiritually, educationally or economically through their association with the WHS will actively be sought and pursued. The traditional core purposes of the Site will be maintained as an essential part of the WHS's Outstanding Universal Value and related significances.

Key Principles

The management of a WHS is aided by the establishment of Key Principles. The six Key Principles for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS are designed to be long lasting, and to remain relevant during all future revisions of the Management Plan. All actions at the WHS need to be tested against these Principles to ensure that they are in keeping with the spirit of the Management Plan, and that they hold the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS at their core.

- The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS will be managed by consensus, achieved through an active partnership between all of the site managers, owners and relevant statutory agencies.
- The Management Plan's vision, key principles and objectives will provide the overarching framework for all plans, policies and decisions relating to the WHS.
- All decisions and actions at the site will have at their core the need for the high quality and informed conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS.
- The management of the WHS will aim towards an increase in its accessibility, including the reasonable and practicable removal of physical, sensory, intellectual, social, cultural and organisational barriers to access.
- The management of the WHS will promote and increase knowledge and understanding of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its significances for all.
- All decisions and actions at the site will be based on the principles of sensitivity and appropriate sustainability, as defined by the Budapest Declaration on World Heritage.

Management Objectives

The Vision and Principles are complemented by a series of management objectives that seek to deliver a sustainable future for the WHS. The Management Plan's objectives have been developed through a clear understanding of the issues facing the Site. The intention is to review these objectives every 6 years; the Vision and the Key Principles are intended to provide a longer-term framework for the Site.

Managing the World Heritage Site and its Setting

- Objective 1:** Establish a WHS Coordinating Committee.
- Objective 2:** Recommend that DCMS invite the UNESCO World Heritage Committee to approve a revised Statement of Significance and the extension of the Site to include Palace Green and undertake a future review of the WHS boundary.
- Objective 3:** Conserve the setting of the WHS and encourage appropriate and sensitive development to support the ongoing regeneration of Durham and its environs.
- Objective 4:** Monitor risks and periodically review the risk monitoring process.
- Objective 5:** Seek funding for the management, conservation and promotion of the WHS.
- Objective 6:** Regularly monitor the condition of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS in line with the indicators in the Management Plan and periodically review the Management Plan.

Conserving the Site and its Outstanding Universal Value

- Objective 7:** Continue to monitor and deepen an understanding of the built heritage resource to ensure that change is well managed and problems are rapidly identified and addressed.
- Objective 8:** Ensure that the WHS's owners are supported in their management and conservation of the WHS.
- Objective 9:** Ensure that the built heritage of the WHS is conserved, and that sympathetic materials, styles and techniques are utilised by all conservation projects within the WHS.
- Objective 10:** Complete the works necessary to remove the Castle from the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' Register.
- Objective 11:** Continue to develop and implement the high quality management of the Peninsula's archaeological and architectural history resource.
- Objective 12:** Conserve and enhance the historic character and form of the Peninsula's and the WHS's historic townscapes, landscapes and open spaces.
- Objective 13:** Continue to research, document and conserve the WHS's intangible values, qualities and significances.
- Objective 14:** Continue to support the skills present at the WHS, including those skills relating to Christian worship, education, built heritage conservation and music.
- Objective 15:** Further develop the high standard of collections curation at the WHS.

Using the Site

- Objective 16:** Ensure that the aims of the University complement the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS.
- Objective 17:** Ensure that Christian worship remains the primary use of the Cathedral, and that other uses do not impact upon this function.
- Objective 18:** Maintain, enhance and support community access and activities in the WHS.
- Objective 19:** Continue to develop a co-ordinated, high quality sustainable visitor experience at the WHS, which does not impact negatively on the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.
- Objective 20:** Maximise the benefits brought to the region by the sustainable and appropriate use of the WHS as a visitor attraction, and maximise the benefit to the WHS of the local and regional development of Durham's tourism offer.

Enhancing Understanding of the Site

- Objective 21:** Continue to support and enhance the high quality educational provision at the WHS in a manner that is inclusive and accessible to all.
- Objective 22:** Support high quality research that enhances the understanding and management of the WHS.

Improving Access and Sustainable Transport

- Objective 23:** Improve access to the WHS for non-vehicular users and promote pedestrian and cycle modes of transport.
- Objective 24:** Improve access between the bus and rail stations and the WHS, and encourage improvements to the facilities and information available at the stations.
- Objective 25:** Improve the facilities and experience for coach parties to the WHS in a way that does not impact upon the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS and its setting.
- Objective 26:** Monitor and assess car use within the WHS.
- Objective 27:** Identify and remove physical, social, organisational and intellectual barriers to access across the WHS, where reasonable and practicable.

Implementing the Plan

Within the UK, WH Sites are not statutory designations. However, the government's Planning Policy Guidance Note 15 (PPG15) encourages local authorities in England to develop specific planning policies for the WH Sites in their districts. The status of WH Sites in legislation is currently under review as part of the Government's national

designations Review (DCMS). At present WHS Management Plans have no statutory basis, rather they provide an advisory policy framework for guiding and influencing current, planned or potential management initiatives at a variety of scales and for different purposes. Achieving the desired aims for the WHS therefore depends on those signing up to the Management Plan working effectively together in partnership towards the agreed objectives.

The organisations that have worked together to develop the Management Plan for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS now need to continue to work in partnership to implement its aims and objectives to secure the protection of the Site and its Outstanding Universal Value for future generations. The implementation of the Management Plan's objectives requires the support and participation of these and other organisations, individuals and funding bodies. The Plan itself can provide the focus for coordinating this effort, but it requires a significant level of continued commitment and resources if it is to succeed. Continued maintenance and conservation to ensure permanent removal from the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' register will require particularly high levels of internal and external investment, funding and other forms of fundraising.

The recognition of this commitment to the WHS and the implementation of the Management Plan are implicit in the work of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan Steering Group. This group was responsible for bringing this WHS Management Plan to fruition, and have been working together for several years in this capacity. The existence of the Steering Group represents a long-term commitment by its members to conserving and improving the WHS.

The members of the Steering Group have a central role to play in the implementation and monitoring of the Management Plan. They have an important role to play in creating a sense of ownership and support for the objectives of the Plan amongst all users of the Site, and those that may be affected by the Plan. They have a responsibility to promote the Plan to potential funders and to raise the funds necessary to address the key issues raised in the Plan. In order that progress with the plan may continue, the advisory and coordinating role of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group needs to continue; this Steering Group will be reconstituted as the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Coordinating Committee. One of the first actions of this Committee will be the consideration of the appointment of a WHS Officer, to support them in their work.

The Management Plan's objectives will be achieved through a wide range of actions. These are outlined in the Plan along with their associated objectives, and are summarised in an Action Plan Summary Table contained in Section 5.0. This table identifies those agencies with the lead responsibility for the delivery of key actions, and identifies the target dates for their completion.



1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 An Introduction to World Heritage

What is World Heritage?

- 1.1.1 The idea of a World Heritage lies at the core of the *World Heritage Convention*, adopted by UNESCO in 1972, to which 180 nations are currently signatories. The Convention defines '*World Heritage Sites*' as places or buildings of Outstanding Universal Value recognised as constituting a world heritage '*for whose protection it is the duty of the international community as a whole to co-operate*'.
- 1.1.2 The Convention came into force in 1975 and established a *World Heritage List* as a means of identifying, protecting, conserving and presenting those parts of the world's natural and cultural heritage that are of sufficient '*Outstanding Universal Value*' to be the responsibility of the international community as a whole. By ratifying the Convention, nation states are pledged to safeguard the WH Sites in their territory.
- 1.1.3 The *World Heritage List* includes a diverse range of types and forms of Site. Together they form a common heritage that should be respected and managed as a unique testimony to our shared past. The disappearance or degradation of any one Site would be an irreversible loss. The need to sustain this heritage is therefore of concern to us all. These sentiments form the basis for the broad objectives of the World Heritage Convention. The Convention seeks to ensure the protection of WH Sites through a closer co-operation among nations, and through providing measures for the protection of natural and cultural heritage as a whole.
- 1.1.4 The World Heritage Convention recognises two different types of WHS: Cultural and Natural. Mixed Sites contain both cultural and natural elements. As of July 2004, the World Heritage List contains 812 WH Sites in 135 countries worldwide, of which 628 are cultural, 160 natural and 24 are mixed properties.
- 1.1.5 Durham Cathedral and Castle was inscribed in 1986 as a cultural WHS. Cultural WH Sites are defined in the World Heritage Convention as a '*monument, group of buildings or site of historical, aesthetic, archaeological, scientific, ethnological or anthropological value*'.

The United Kingdom and World Heritage

- 1.1.6 The United Kingdom (UK) ratified the World Heritage Convention in 1984 and submitted its first Tentative List in 1986. The Tentative List is the list of potential WH Sites that may be nominated in due course by the State Party as Candidate WH Sites for consideration by the World Heritage Committee for WHS status.
- 1.1.7 The Department for Culture, Media and Sport (DCMS) is responsible for the UK's compliance with the Convention, and for submitting nominations. Twenty-six cultural and natural heritage sites have now been inscribed on the World Heritage List in the UK and its overseas territories: sixteen of these are in England, four in Scotland, two in Wales, one in Northern Ireland and three in the UK's Overseas Territories and Crown Dependencies.

1.2 The Need for a WHS Management Plan

UNESCO requirements

- 1.2.1 The Operational Guidelines issued by the World Heritage Committee strongly recommend that all State Parties have in place for each WHS Management Plans or other appropriate management systems and adequate legal protection suitable for securing the long-term conservation of WHS. The creation of WHS Management Plans has been the response of several governments, including the UK, to the more general management requirements of the Guidelines.
- 1.2.2 In addition, all European and North American WHS inscribed prior to 1997 are subject to the current round of Periodic Reporting to UNESCO, which needs to be completed by 2005/6. Periodic Reporting takes the form of a report submitted by each of the State Parties that covers a number of key questions, including the application of the World Heritage Convention by the State Party, and the state of conservation of individual WH Sites. As part of the Periodic reporting for each individual Site the State Party needs to report on the management arrangements and management plans for the Sites "*as compared to the situation at the time of inscription*" (UNESCO, undated, II.4).

UK Government Policy

- 1.2.3 *Planning Policy Guidance Note 15: Planning for the Historic Environment (PPG 15)*, which applies to England only, clearly states that WH Sites are "... a key material consideration to be taken into account by local planning authorities in determining planning and listed building consent applications ..." (paragraph 2.22). *PPG 15* also states that local planning authorities should formulate policies for the

protection of WH Sites. The preparation of comprehensive Management Plans for WH Sites by local planning authorities in consultation with WHS Stakeholders is encouraged by *PPG 15*. The UK government expressed its commitment to working with all interested parties to develop Management Plans for English WH Sites in *The Historic Environment: A Force for our Future*, issued by the Department for Culture, Media and Sport (DCMS) and the Department for Transport, Local Government and the Regions (DTLR) in December 2001. The UK Government also actively supports the development of Management Plans for all Candidate WH Sites on the Tentative List, and for all nominations.

- 1.2.4 As an early WHS nomination, inscribed in 1986, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS was not required to prepare a Management Plan at the time of inscription. However, DCMS has requested that all UK WH Sites ensure that they have a Management Plan in place in order to fulfil the requirements of Periodic Reporting in 2005/6.

The Local Situation

- 1.2.5 The need for a Management Plan stems not only from international guidance and UK Government policy but also from the situation within the Site and its environs. The production of a useful and practical Management Plan for Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS has been a long-standing aspiration of the various organisations that make up the WHS Management Plan Steering Group and who have a direct interest in the Site. This Steering Group recognises that to achieve the World Heritage Convention's aims of sustaining the Outstanding Universal Value of WH Sites, there is a need to develop a co-ordinated and consensual framework for the long-term management and development of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS. This Management Plan forms a core component of that framework.

1.3 Purpose of the Plan

- 1.3.1 The overarching aim of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan is:

To describe an approach to the future management of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS that will retain and strengthen the balance between conserving the historic environment, enhancing the local character and amenities of the WHS and surroundings with the need to keep the WHS in active and appropriate use, primarily as a religious, educational and residential working environment.

1.3.2 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan has the following key aims:

- To enable the definition of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS, in line with World Heritage Committee procedures;
- To maintain the quality and local distinctiveness of the WHS and its environment;
- To understand the processes and history of the WHS and use this knowledge to better inform plans for the current use and enjoyment of the Site for its resident religious and educational establishments, as a visitor attraction and as a local community resource and for future uses and enjoyment of the WHS;
- To set out guidelines for the use of the land, buildings, landscape, townscape and cultural assets of the WHS, and include guidance for their sustainable conservation and maintenance;
- To recommend how the educational and interpretational potential of the Site could be realised further, to better inform the public as well as the formal users of the various buildings and functions housed within the WHS;
- To develop sustainable tourism and a positive visitor experience;
- To develop a programme of projects to implement the above, conserving and enhancing the WHS for all;
- To sustain the current uses of the WHS as the most appropriate way of maintaining and enhancing its significance.

1.4 Status and Role of the Plan

1.4.1 The UK government is currently undertaking a review of heritage designations and their status in planning law. Currently within the UK, WH Sites are not statutory designations and their Management Plans have no statutory basis. However, this situation is under review within the DCMS Review of Heritage Protection, as a result of which legislation may be proposed to make WH Sites statutory designations. Against this changing legislative background, WHS Management Plans provide an agreed policy framework for guiding and influencing current and future actions at the Site. Achieving a sustainable future for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS depends on those supporting the Management Plan working effectively together in partnership towards the agreed aims (see above) and objectives (see Section 4.0).

- 1.4.2 The Management Plan forms a core component of a wider framework of plans and strategies for the future management of the WHS and its environs. The other key documents in this framework include:

UK Government Planning Policy Guidance Note 15 (1994)
UK Government Planning Policy Guidance Note 16 (1990)
UK NE Regional Planning Guidance for the North East (2002)
Durham County Council, County Durham Structure Plan (1991-2006)
City of Durham Council, City of Durham Local Plan (Adopted April 2004)
The Durham Riverbanks Management Plan (2002)
Durham City Vision

1.5 Preparation of the Plan

- 1.5.1 The Management Plan has been prepared in broad accordance with the general procedures and requirements published in a number of WHS-related documents, including the following:

Management Guidelines for World Cultural Heritage Sites (Fielden and Jokilehto, 1998).
Charter for the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban Areas (ICOMOS 1987)
Charter for the Protection and Management of the Archaeological Heritage (ICOMOS 1990)
Charter on the Built Vernacular Heritage (ICOMOS 1999)
Nara Declaration on Authenticity (UNESCO 1994)
Budapest Declaration on World Heritage (UNESCO 2002)
Burra Charter (Australia ICOMOS 1999)

- 1.5.2 In addition several other recently published UK WHS Management Plans have also been consulted during the preparation of this plan for Durham. These include Management Plans for the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew; the City of Bath; Hadrian's Wall; Canterbury; Liverpool Maritime Mercantile City and the draft Management Plan for the Tower of London.

1.6 Structure of the Plan

1.0 Introduction

This section broadly outlines the nature and structure of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan and the history of its development.

2.0 *Description of the Site*

This section describes the Site's history, development and character and its relationship with its setting.

3.0 *Assessment of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site*

This section assesses the Site's tangible and intangible Outstanding Universal Value and provides an overview of the Site's broader significance.

4.0 *Management Issues and Objectives*

This section details a vision for the Site's future; the key issues affecting the significance of the Site and the management objectives designed to address these issues.

5.0 *Implementation Monitoring and Review*

The mechanisms and programme for the implementation of the vision and objectives are set out in this section within the context of the short (5-year), medium (10-year) and long-term (30-year) actions.



2.0 DESCRIPTION OF THE SITE

2.0 DESCRIPTION OF THE SITE

2.1 Location and Extent of the Site

Name of the World Heritage Site

2.1.1 Durham Cathedral and Castle (WHS 370).

Country

2.1.2 England, within the United Kingdom.

County and Region

2.1.3 County Durham in the North East of England.

Location

2.1.4 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is located within Durham City, in County Durham, in the North East of England.

2.1.5 In this region the River Wear has carved a twisted and tortuous route through the Pennine Spurs to the west and the Magnesian limestone to the east, in places creating a broad floodplain, and in others carving a deep incision. In the area of Durham this river carves its way through a topographic bowl, within which sits the Durham peninsula. The raised plateau of the Durham peninsula is defined by one of the incised meanders of the River Wear, which is so pronounced that the river doubles back on itself before continuing north to the sea. This intimate geography of peninsula and river gorge has created a highly defensible peninsula, which possesses distinctive views from the edge of the outer riverbank across to the plateau and from the river valley floor up to the medieval Cathedral and Castle buildings. Indeed, the name Durham derives from Old English meaning 'hill-island'.

2.1.6 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is located on this distinctive raised plateau of the Durham peninsula. The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct occupies the southern area of the peninsula, and the Castle occupies the northern end. The WHS is in two separate parts. Overall it is currently 600m long and 380m wide. These dimensions would not change substantially with the proposed boundary change to include Palace Green (see Section 2.2). The current boundary encompasses an area of c.6.8ha, the proposed boundary would encompass an area of c.8.6ha.

Geographical Coordinates

- 2.1.7 The geographical location of the WHS taken from the centre of the main Cathedral tower is:

Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS

Latitude	1.35' W
Longitude	54.47' N
National Grid:	NZ 427345: 542360

2.2 Proposed Boundary Changes to the Original Nomination

- 2.2.1 When the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS was inscribed in 1986 it consisted of two separate elements, the Castle and the Cathedral, separated by Palace Green. The boundaries for these two elements, shown on Figure 2.1, were drawn closely around the main buildings but also included Prebends Bridge to the south.
- 2.2.2 Since 1986, the boundary of the Site has been regularly criticised for being drawn too tightly and for not encompassing all of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site (e.g. ICOMOS-UK 1995). As a result, the WHS Management Plan Steering Group undertook a formal review of the WHS boundary in 2004 as part of the preparation for the WHS Management Plan. Extracts from the "*Review of Site Boundary*" paper are included in Appendix 4.
- 2.2.3 Based on the information included in the "*Review of Site Boundary*" paper, and on discussions held within the Steering Group, it has been decided to propose to the State Party that the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is recommended to the World Heritage Committee for expansion, to include the open space and buildings of Palace Green. Palace Green is an integral part of the medieval fortified Castle and Cathedral complex, and was once the formal processional route between the two buildings. It was created in the 12th century, for the purpose of uniting the two buildings within a single designed landscape.
- 2.2.4 This proposed expansion would reunite the Castle, the home of the Bishops, with the Cathedral, their church, within a single WHS boundary. It would also include part of the historic designed setting of the buildings. It would improve the ease of management of the Site, through enabling the inclusion of the management issues faced by Palace Green within the WHS Management Plan, such as the issue of providing adequate emergency vehicle access to the main buildings when Palace Green is used for parking. The inclusion of Palace Green would improve the historic integrity and cohesiveness of the

Site and would facilitate the experience of a more encompassing 'sense of place' for the WHS than is currently afforded, including the exterior as well as the interior experience of the key buildings. The local importance attached to the expansion of the WHS is reflected in its inclusion as a policy in the City of Durham Local Plan (policy E4).

2.2.5 The possibility of a further formal boundary review is included within the Action Plan as one of the medium term objectives for the Site, tied in with the 2011 review of the WHS Management Plan.

2.2.6 The proposed new boundary for the Site described is as follows and shown on Figure 2.1:

Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS: the Site is bounded to the east and south by Saddler Street (southern extent of road), the North Bailey and the South Bailey; by the riverbank to the west; by the surrounding buildings to the north.

2.2.7 The inclusion of Palace Green can be seen to be a logical addition to the Site, and would result in a relatively minor expansion of the WHS. To write the Management Plan in a way that continually notes that Palace Green has not yet been formally incorporated within the Site would make the Management Plan clumsy, and significantly longer. For these reasons the WHS Management Plan assumes that the expansion of the WHS to include Palace Green has been agreed and the text of the Management Plan is written from this position.

2.3 Historic Development of the WHS

2.3.1 Traditionally, the establishment of the ecclesiastical settlement on the peninsula and the founding of Durham City has been linked to the arrival of monks from Lindisfarne seeking a safe location for the body of St Cuthbert. However there is some evidence of intermittent human activity on the peninsula and in the vicinity from the Mesolithic (c.10,000 to 4,500 BC) onwards. This is unsurprising given the lofty and defensible feature of the incised meander of the River Wear within which the peninsula is located.

The Life of Cuthbert and the Legend of his Arrival at Durham

2.3.2 St Cuthbert was an influential and renowned Northumbrian Saint. Over time many legends and miracles have been attributed to him, which has made it difficult to unravel the actual historical events of his life.

- 2.3.3 St Cuthbert was probably born in about 634 AD and spent his boyhood in the Melrose region of the Scottish Borders. As a young man he joined the monastic order in Old Melrose and then journeyed around the borders preaching until he was invited to be Prior of Lindisfarne in Northumberland in about 670 AD. After twelve years as Prior he decided to settle on one of the Farne Islands and remained there for three years before being chosen, reluctantly on his part, as Bishop of Hexham in 685 AD.
- 2.3.4 When Cuthbert was about 51 years old he received a premonition of his death and resigned as Bishop Hexham, returning to Inner Farne where he died about two months later. He wished to be buried on Inner Farne, but the Abbot of Lindisfarne had urged him to be buried on Lindisfarne. Cuthbert had agreed to this on the condition that, if danger threatened, his bones were to be moved with the monks as they fled.
- 2.3.5 Eleven years after Cuthbert's death the monks were granted permission to open his coffin, and were amazed to find his body in a perfect state of preservation. The body was placed in a new coffin and kept above ground where it quickly became a focus for pilgrimage.
- 2.3.6 After two Viking raids, in 793 AD (a Norwegian raid) and 875 AD (Scandinavian colonisation), the monks were forced to leave Lindisfarne and took with them St Cuthbert's body among their other precious items and relics. After seven years of travelling, they arrived in Chester-le-Street where they remained for 113 years before being forced to move again by further Viking threats. They travelled to Ripon briefly and then attempted to return to Chester-le-Street. Legend has it that as they reached Wrdelau (possibly Warden Law, the site of a Bronze Age burial mound near modern Houghton-le-Spring) St Cuthbert's spirit prevented the coffin from travelling any further.
- 2.3.7 The coffin of St Cuthbert remained immovable for three days. During this time, one of the monks had a vision in which he was instructed to take the coffin to Dunholme. However, none of the monks had heard of Dunholme.
- 2.3.8 Then two young girls passed them; as they passed, one asked the other whether she had seen a lost cow, the other replied that she had seen it at Dunholme. Hearing the name Dunholme, the monks followed the two girls and the previously immovable cart containing the coffin moved easily. The monks soon arrived at Dunholme and began to build a small church: the foundation of the Community of St Cuthbert, later the Cathedral and the City of Durham.

The Archaeology

- 2.3.9 Located on the defensible and distinctive Durham peninsula, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its immediate environs (see Figure 2.5) represents one of the oldest settlement areas of the town. The combination of water, fertile land and natural defences make Durham the ideal location for a settlement.
- 2.3.10 The archaeology of the WHS includes both upstanding remains and buried deposits. The WHS contains two Scheduled Monuments: Prebends Bridge and the Water Gate (see Figure 2.7). The archaeological significance of the WHS is complex and varied, including archaeological information relating to the pre-Community of St Cuthbert settlement; the development of the medieval monastic settlement and Cathedral; the development of the medieval defended site; and the post-medieval development of the WHS. The WHS contains such archaeological deposits as the remains of demolished buildings, small-scale industry, facilities provided for pilgrims and the domestic arrangements of the WH Site's former residents. The archaeology of the WHS and the medieval town also illustrates the important relationship between the Cathedral/Castle complex and the town. One of the key unanswered archaeological questions at the WHS is the location and form of the Saxon Cathedral and its associated landscape.
- 2.3.11 The WHS has high potential to contain palaeoenvironmental evidence within the Cathedral grounds and within a number of other areas with potentially deeply stratified deposits. The WHS is also important in possessing a significant documentary record that can illuminate the WH Site's archaeological evidence, and vice versa. For example, there are monastic account rolls of spices, fruits and meats brought or stored within the Cathedral Priory that could be tied in with archaeological deposits from middens in the area and from the remains of refuse thrown over the banks of the Wear. The depth of archaeological deposits across the WHS is highly variable, ranging from the shallow deposits of Palace Green to the deeper deposits to the east of the Cathedral.

Prehistoric Durham

- 2.3.12 Stray finds around the City of flints and cores from the Mesolithic and Neolithic (c. 1000 -2300 BC) point to use of the area by the hunter-gathers and early farmers of this period. Two Bronze Age (c.2,300-700BC) round barrows and three cremation burials in Durham City point to the existence of a settled community near or on the peninsula during the Bronze Age, and possibly earlier.

- 2.3.13 The first firm evidence of occupation in the area of the Durham peninsula comes from the Iron Age (700BC-AD43). The remains of an Iron Age hillfort at Maiden Castle and a farmstead at Old Durham may suggest a reasonably large and settled community in the area. However, as is common with many urban sites of this type, later construction, demolition and reuse of sites is likely to have destroyed much of the archaeological evidence of prehistoric occupation.

Roman Durham

- 2.3.14 During the Roman period (AD43-410), the farmstead at Old Durham continued to be occupied and modernised in the Roman style. Although the main house has not been located, excavation has revealed a bathhouse and surfaces that may be the remains of the farm's threshing floors. The owners appear to have altered and expanded the farmstead over time, building the bathhouse sometime between the 2nd and 4th century AD over the top of the earlier boundary ditch.
- 2.3.15 The other main feature of Roman Durham, which has emerged during excavation and past building work, is the Roman road running from Great Stainton to Chester-le-Street through what is now Durham City. However, there are remarkably few Roman finds from Durham City, considering the high level of Roman evidence elsewhere in the region. This may suggest a low population, or it may merely be the result of poor survival due to later disturbance.

Early Medieval Durham

- 2.3.16 The earliest record of Durham during the early medieval period (410-1066 AD) comes from the *Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, which records the consecration of a Bishop at Aelfet (meaning Swan Island, probably the origin of the name Elvet in Durham) in 762 AD. There is some evidence for an Anglo-Saxon settlement on the peninsula, which developed rapidly after the arrival of St Cuthbert's body in 995 AD with the community of monks from Lindisfarne.
- 2.3.17 Following the settlement of the peninsula by the Community of St Cuthbert, a temporary wooden cover made out of the bough of a tree was constructed to protect St Cuthbert's coffin. This was replaced by a whitewashed timber (or wattle and daub) church, known as the 'white church' or 'Alba Ecclesia', which was in turn replaced with a stone church, the 'Ecclesia Major', started in 995 AD and consecrated in 998 AD. According to a contemporary account, this church had two stone towers with bronze pinnacles, one at the west end and the other over the choir. This was still standing at the Norman Conquest in 1066. It was demolished after 1093 to make way for the present Cathedral church. The location of the Saxon 'ecclesia major' is not currently known: work by St John Hope in 1909 and further work by Cambridge, Briggs and Bailey has identified a possible position south of the

present Cathedral, across the present cloister garth. This site has failed to respond to recent geophysical investigation, but this does not in itself disprove that hypothesis.

Medieval Durham

Overview

- 2.3.18 During the medieval period, the monastic settlement on the peninsula underwent several phases of expansion, focussing around the building and rebuilding of the church housing the relics of St Cuthbert and St Oswald, and the construction of the motte and bailey Castle. In 1093 demolition of the Anglo-Saxon church began to make way for the new Cathedral, and by the end of the 11th century the Castle had also been expanded. Both the Castle and the Cathedral precinct were developed throughout the medieval period, and were joined in a formal design through the creation of the Palace Green in the early 12th century. Both the Castle and the Cathedral were enclosed within a single defensive Castle Wall, which also enclosed their associated bailey (now North and South Bailey). This wall extended to the edge of the top of the peninsula and included an extensive bailey in addition to the Castle and Cathedral. The sides of the peninsula were an intrinsic part of the complex's defences, and the inner and possibly also the outer valley sides were kept clear of trees for this purpose.
- 2.3.19 The town had separate defences from the Castle, with a Town Wall extending around the core of the settlement. A history of intermittent conflicts with the Scots ensured that the defences of the site remained an important consideration throughout the medieval period. The town was stimulated by the successive waves of pilgrimage activity, and with the Prince Bishops as the regional authority, also flourished as the regional centre for trade and commerce.
- 2.3.20 The topography of the city has resulted in a very curious administrative geography, where the medieval town consisted of a number of separate boroughs belonging to the Bishop and the Priory. The Castle was the home of the Bishop, and the centre of his palatinate jurisdiction, while the Cathedral and Priory were to some extent separate. The Bishop controlled the Bishop's Borough (or the Borough of Durham), centred on the Market Place and extending into Claypath, and including part of Framwellgate. The Priory had boroughs in Elvet (New Elvet) on the east and Old Borough (Crossgate) on the west, which were separately controlled by different monastic officials. St Giles to the north was owned by Keping Priory. This multiplicity of jurisdictions is no more than a reflection of the natural divisions of the town, which has affected the entire history of its settlement. What this also shows is that the medieval town (i.e. 13th-16th centuries) already had significant suburbs on the north, east and west sides of the peninsula which itself retained the primary functions of Cathedral and Castle, with the market place nearby.

2.3.21 The town and peninsula were set within a broader landscape of secular and religious power. Not all the key buildings relating to the functioning of the Castle, Cathedral and Priory were contained within the peninsula, with, for example, the Priory Hall Garth in Hallgarth Street representing part of the Priory's economic base. The strategically important South Street ran to the west of the river bend and the city's churches were located at key positions within the boroughs. A circle of crosses, including the famous Neville Cross, site of the routing of the Scots in 1346, surrounded the peninsula. In addition, two hospitals, Kepier Hospital and St Mary Magdalene Hospital were located to the northeast. As would be expected of such a location, the area was rich with water powered mills, some of which belonged to the institutions residing on the peninsula.

Medieval Developments in Durham

2.3.22 After the Norman Conquest the strategic importance of Durham was quickly realised and in 1072 Waltheof, Earl of Northumberland began to build an earthen 'motte' and a timber Castle. Bishop Walcher planned to regularise the secular Community at Durham before his murder in 1080, but it was St Calais who installed Benedictines. The murder of Bishop Walcher angered the King and he began his revenge, laying waste to much of the area, basing his operations at Durham. Walcher's successor, William of St Calais (or St Carileph) continued to establish the monastery and decided to replace the 'ecclesia major' with the present Cathedral. Bishop William's successor was Ranulph Flambard, the first of the Prince-Bishops who had the power to mint money, raise taxes and gather an army. By the end of the 11th century, the Castle had been expanded and a bailey built around the level land to the west. In the early 12th century, Bishop Flambard built a large hall within the inner bailey.

2.3.23 During the Norman rule, lands of Durham were intended as a buffer zone between England and Scotland guarded by the soldier Bishops. However, this strategy failed during the reign of King Stephen when King David of Scotland joined forces with the Empress Maud and took over Northumbria. Pitched battles occurred in the streets of Durham and the surrounding area until King Henry II eventually regained Northumbria in 1157.

2.3.24 Bishop Le Pusiet was the nephew of Henry II and did much to increase the prosperity of Durham and the power of the Prince Bishops. In Durham he refounded Kepier Hospital (the later gatehouse of which still survives) added a second bridge and established the neighbouring borough at Elvet. In the Cathedral he built the Galilee Chapel and in the Castle he rebuilt the north range of the inner bailey. During the 13th century the Castle continued to be enlarged as a residence of the Prince Bishops, most significantly with the rebuilding of the great hall in the west range.

- 2.3.25 In 1311 the Scottish army, led by Robert the Bruce, attacked Durham, pillaged the outskirts but failed to breach the defences. The defences were strengthened, and in 1333, Edward III stayed at Durham during his campaign against the Scots. There were Scottish attacks in 1313, 1315, 1322 and 1327, culminating in the major conflict in 1346 when the Scots were routed at the Battle of Neville's Cross, just outside Durham.
- 2.3.26 The other major problem faced by medieval inhabitants of Durham was the series of plagues, most notably the 'Black Death', which reached Durham in 1349. This took its toll on both the population and the economy. Pilgrims ceased to visit the shrines of St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede and trade was reduced.
- 2.3.27 By the early 16th century Durham was more stable and trade became increasingly important. A guildhall had been built in the Market Place in 1356 and by the 16th century almost all of the major trades guilds were established in Durham. A number of the present houses in the centre of Durham have their origins in this period of prosperity.

Post-medieval Durham

- 2.3.28 Henry VIII's Reformation had a huge impact on Durham, focussed as the town was on the Cathedral and its Priory, the bishopric and the revenues brought by pilgrimage. Although many of the Cathedral furnishings were damaged or dismantled, including the shrine of St Cuthbert, the buildings were unharmed. Many of the monks were re-appointed as residentiary canons of the new Cathedral chapter: the last Prior became the first Dean. However, this did not compensate for the loss of business from the cessation of pilgrimage to the shrines, and the impact on the people of Durham of this reduction in trade would have been considerable. During Henry's reign, the first scheme for an educational college at Durham was proposed, however nothing came of this proposal. By this time the Choristers' School attached to the Cathedral had already been established (founded between 1390 and 1416), and housed up to 20 pupils. It remained this size until the 1940s when the school was given permission to expand.
- 2.3.29 In 1569, the Earls of Northumberland and Westmorland initiated the Rising of the North to restore Catholicism. Their forces marched on Durham, the high altar was retrieved from its hiding place and Catholic mass was heard again in the Cathedral. However the rebellion collapsed, the Earls had their estates forfeited and fled to Scotland and 500 of their followers were executed. Fines were imposed on the local landowners who had supported the revolt and the countryside became impoverished. This situation was further aggravated by a famine in 1587 when the harvest failed.

- 2.3.30 The plague returned in 1589, and during a later outbreak in 1597, 844 people died from plague in Durham (the whole population of Durham in 1635 was only about 2000). Several priests and laymen were hanged, drawn and quartered at Durham during this period as part of Elizabeth I's campaign against Catholicism. The site of the executions is believed to be at the modern roundabout at County Hall.
- 2.3.31 In 1643, Charles I was entertained in Durham on his way to Edinburgh to be crowned King of the Scots. Four years later he returned, as a prisoner, on the way to London for his trial and execution. Much of the North was Royalist during the Civil War, but there were a considerable number of Cromwell's supporters in Durham. During the period of the Interregnum the bishopric was abolished and in Durham, the Castle was sold.
- 2.3.32 In 1650, after the Battle of Dunbar, the greater part of the 3,000 Scottish prisoners captured by Cromwell were marched to Durham and held in the Cathedral. This led to the burning of all the wooden fittings (except the clock) by the prisoners for firewood and the theft of other church property by their gaolers. The Castle was used as a prison hospital at this time.
- 2.3.33 A proposal for an educational establishment at Durham was again put forward during the Commonwealth: Cromwell planned to use the Cathedral revenues to found a university at Durham. In May 1657, letters patent were issued for the foundation of a corporate body to be known as the "*Provost, Fellows and Scholars of the College in Durham of the Foundation of Oliver, Lord Protector*", and the Provost and Fellows were nominated. However, a proposal that the College would be able to confer degrees caused Oxford and Cambridge to oppose the scheme, and the idea died with the Protectorate.
- 2.3.34 With the restoration of Charles II to the throne, most of the powers and property of the Prince Bishops were restored along with the wealth of the bishopric. Bishop John Cosin, a canon of the Cathedral before the Civil War, returned as Bishop, and instigated and stimulated an extensive programme of public building and church restoration.
- 2.3.35 In the 18th and early 19th centuries, Durham changed more gradually with houses being built for the lawyers and merchants of the area. Large town houses were built and older houses were re-fronted to enable the fashionable local gentry to enjoy the 'season' of dances, theatre and other entertainment. Such re-fronting of houses was a particular feature at the Outer Bailey of the Castle/Cathedral complex where earlier structures still remain behind the Georgian facades. To accompany the new Georgian architecture of the town and peninsula, a series of terraced gardens was constructed along the inner riverbanks. Once kept clear of trees for defensive purposes, this recreation of the peninsula's valley

sides as gardens made complete the post-medieval transformation of the Durham peninsula from defended medieval complex to the heart of a newly fashionable County town.

- 2.3.36 More and more church owned land was gradually sold for these new developments and in 1832, after the passage through Parliament of "*an Act to enable the Dean and Chapter of Durham to appropriate part of the property of the church to the establishment of a University in connection therewith*", the Bishop agreed to relinquish the Castle to allow the University to be established there. By 1836 the quasi-regal powers of the Prince-Bishops, in decline since the Reformation, had finally been extinguished following legislation a year earlier which established a new structure for local government in Durham in which trade guilds and the church played no part.
- 2.3.37 Temporary accommodation for the students at the new University of Durham was provided in the house known as Archdeacon's Inn on Palace Green, and the first students came into residence in 1833. On 1st June 1837 a Royal Charter was issued recognising and confirming the constitution of the University, and an Order of the Queen in Council formally appropriated Durham Castle to the uses of the University.
- 2.3.38 Some new industry became established in Durham City during the post medieval period: a woollen mill was established in 1789 and was soon converted into a carpet factory, which proved very successful. Mustard milling and organ building were also important local industries. The best-known and most successful local industry was the mining industry, which was a major employer in County Durham from the 18th century onwards.

The Modern Durham Peninsula

- 2.3.39 Today, the Durham peninsula sits at the heart of a vibrant city. This city has undergone a series of dramatic changes during the modern period, which has seen large-scale relocations of the city's population to new public authority houses at 'New Durham', accompanied by the clearance of inner city slums. The collapse of the mining industry along with the demise of manufacturing, has led the city and the region to refocus its economic activity to retail, tourism and service industries.
- 2.3.40 The peninsula has remained a constant through this period of change, providing religious and educational services for the local population, and for the ever-changing populations of students resident at the University. The change that has taken place at the peninsula during this timeframe has generally been subtler than that which has taken place in its surroundings. Sensitive modern buildings have been built to accommodate the changing needs of the institutions, whilst the riverside gardens have gradually been hidden beneath self-regenerating woodland.

2.3.41 At the beginning of the 21st century, the internationally renowned Cathedral and University play a central role in the life and economy of the City; a role which is epitomised by the dominance of their iconic historic buildings at the centre of the city skyline.

The Modern Durham City

2.3.42 The local governance of the City and its surrounding villages is carried out by City of Durham Council. This body was initially established by Bishop Le Pusiet's Charter of 1197, with powers being granted through successive local and national charters and statute. The modern District has a population of just over 90,300.

2.3.43 In common with the national trends, heavy industry and the manufacturing sector declined in the region during the late twentieth century. Durham City was well placed to pick up the service sector expansion given its role as a County "town", University and religious centre as well as a growing and robust business centre. The district had low deprivation indicators and low unemployment. To build on this the City centre developed a range of vibrant and growing businesses to cater for retail and service industries as well as visitors. Support for City centre business included major new retail developments such as Milburngate Shopping Centre, Prince Bishop Shopping Centre as well as the Millennium City Project, incorporating the Gala Theatre, Community Resource Centres and the new Clayport Public Library. However, the surrounding rural areas continued to reflect the legacy of mining despoliation.

2.3.44 The well defined areas of deprivation, fuelled by common rural issues such as lack of communication, economic vitality and opportunity for community capacity building (helping people to help themselves), have led to regeneration intervention and national and European funding to tackle the issues.

2.3.45 At the beginning of the 21st century Durham continues to promote specialist employment opportunities in the field of research and technology and business development. The successful new Mountjoy Centre links academic research and value to commercial enterprises. Rural diversification aims to conserve local heritage and stimulate the rural economy. Development pressures within the City centre reflect high land value. The re-use of urban land is a keystone to the policy of sustainable development needed to manage finite resources within the whole City. The challenge remains to link central vitality with the rural hinterland allowing smaller settlements to enjoy a needed injection of economic stability.

2.4 Description of the WHS and its Environs

- 2.4.1 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS combines a remarkable assemblage of buildings of great scale and drama, and of rich and innovative architecture, set within the distinctive and high quality townscape of Palace Green and the Cathedral College.
- 2.4.2 The WHS has a unique landscape setting of three distinct parts. Close to the WHS are the immediate environs of the steep sided peninsula with its wooded river gorge and the historic townscape of Durham (see Figure 2.5) to the north. At a farther distance is the Inner Bowl, a topographical feature which is largely contained within the confines of the urban centre, but which contains significant natural and undeveloped hills. The Inner Bowl is surrounded by the more gently rising slopes of the wider Outer Bowl. The Inner and Outer Bowl are key topographical features from which medium (Inner Bowl) and long distance (Outer Bowl) views to and from the WHS can be obtained. The exact boundaries of the Inner and Outer Bowl have not yet been mapped, and form a key action for this WHS Management Plan (see Section 4.3.9-4.3.22). An understanding of the interplay between the Site and its setting is of vital importance to an appreciation of the way in which the WHS is experienced.
- 2.4.3 The Durham region has a distinctively hilly character, with valleys punctuated by drumlin type glacial hills. This topographic characteristic creates a very distinctive experience of the approach to the peninsula, as the Cathedral moves in and out of view with sudden surprise vistas and concealments creating an air of mystery and anticipation. Indeed, it can be said that Durham is a city of views.
- 2.4.4 From the outskirts of the city, the Cathedral and Castle dominates the skyline, sitting at the highest point with nothing to compete with it in terms of scale or architecture. As the peninsula is approached, the townscape experience becomes richer in its history and complexity, whilst the winding and enclosed medieval streets increasingly hide the monuments on the peninsula from view. The open views experienced at the edge of the town give way to framed views at obvious visual gateways into the town, creating an increasing sense of excitement as the final climax of the Cathedral Precinct, Castle and Palace Green is reached. Throughout the town, buildings and streetscapes of significant historic interest contribute to the experience of approaching the peninsula and the WHS from all directions.
- 2.4.5 The following section provides a detailed description of the WHS (Section 2.4.6 to 2.4.41), followed by a description of its setting (Section 2.4.42 to 2.4.65).

The WHS: The Cathedral

- 2.4.6 The Romanesque Cathedral was built between 1093 and 1133. It is impressive for its sheer scale, mass and drama, as well as representing innovative structural developments and a maturity of architectural quality of global significance. It inspires both respect and awe.
- 2.4.7 Durham Cathedral was the first major English church to be covered entirely with a stone vault and one of the earliest buildings in Europe to use ribbed vaulting throughout. It represents the culmination of the structural and aesthetic advances of European Romanesque architecture; the sense of spatial unity it achieves internally was without comparison. This architectural achievement at Durham laid the foundations for the gradual emergence of the Gothic style across Europe during the course of the 12th century.

The Exterior

- 2.4.8 The most commanding features of the Cathedral's exterior are its massive towers. The western towers were completed first, and are distinctive for their four tiers of arcading. The majestic central tower is much higher, and is a later 15th century replacement. These stately towers act as a highly distinctive and widely visible focal point on the skyline of Durham and can be seen from miles around.

The Nave

- 2.4.9 The main entry to the Cathedral is through the north door of the Nave, with its replica of the famous sanctuary knocker. It is said that by grasping this knocker a fugitive could gain 37 days sanctuary in the Cathedral. The original 12th century knocker was removed in 1980 and replaced by a bronze replica and the original is now conserved in the Cathedral's *Treasures of St Cuthbert* exhibition.
- 2.4.10 Once inside, the impact of the Nave is tremendous and awe inspiring. Looking east towards the choir, it offers a monumental impression of immense solidity, strength and austerity. The pairs of alternate rounded and composite pillars with their simple geometrical ornamentation march along its full length. The eye is also drawn upwards to the stone ribbed vaulted roof which gives a feeling of great height. By contrast, with the scale and grandeur of the Nave, the well-ordered lines of wooden pews seem diminutive. At times the Nave echoes to the music of Cathedral services or the quiet chatter of visitors. At others it is very peaceful and contemplative.

- 2.4.11 The whole of the medieval church would have been originally painted in bright colours, a restored example of which can be seen in the south aisle of the Nave. Whilst the church is now clear, open and spacious, until the Reformation the interior space was fragmented by screens in the Nave and Choir, and by chapels in the side aisles and transepts. The remains of one such, the Neville Chantry chapel with its damaged tomb, survives in the south aisle of the Nave.

The Galilee Chapel

- 2.4.12 At the west end of the Nave lies the Galilee Chapel, perched high above the river gorge, and holding the simple tomb of the Venerable Bede. The chapel was built by Bishop Le Pusiet in the 1170s and has a unique five aisled form. The architecture is transitional between Romanesque and Gothic, combining the strong modelling of the former with the lightness and simplicity of the latter. The large Decorated and Perpendicular style windows fill the whole chapel with light, contrasting strongly with the darker Nave. The stillness and quietness of this space invites lingering.

The Choir and Crossing

- 2.4.13 Together these form the earliest surviving part of the Romanesque church. The Norman arcades provide a pale background against which the rich dark Choir stalls, painted tombs, and the elegant and delicate Neville Screens stand out. The Crossing is supported by four great composite piers, whose inner columns reach far up into the central tower. This area has a character of magnificent splendour and high ceremony.

The Chapel of Nine Altars and Saint Cuthbert's Tomb

- 2.4.14 This 13th century chapel is in the Early English gothic style with tall lancet windows and vaulting piers of Frosterley 'marble' columns. A great north window was added in the late 1280s. From the adjacent choir aisles, steps lead up to a raised stone platform behind the high altar, the feretory (a chapel containing the shrine for a saint's relics), where the tomb of St Cuthbert lies. This tomb was once covered with an ornate Medieval shrine, however this was removed at the Reformation.

The Cloisters

- 2.4.15 The Cloisters lie on the south side of the Cathedral. They are Norman in origin and form the core of the Cathedral Priory. Its buildings represent a complete survival of the medieval claustral ranges. The east range contains the Chapter House of mid-12th century date, and which was restored in the 19th century. Beyond it to the south is the early undercroft of the first late-11th century monastery, built

before work began on the great Cathedral church. This early work extends into the south range undercroft of the monastic refectory, rebuilt in the 16th century and again in the 17th century when it was rebuilt as Dean Sudbury's Library. The long west claustral range shows a sequence of three dormitory remodellings culminating in the vast building of 1398-1404 with its magnificent roof, perhaps the finest monastic dormitory in the country. The adjacent 14th century octagonal kitchen was a rebuilding of an earlier kitchen and was designed to serve four adjacent dining halls in the Prior's Hall, guest hall, infirmary and main refectory. Its magnificent star vaulting was the work of John Lewyn, an innovative master mason of the period. The main claustral ranges are linked by the lower cloister walks that in turn enclose the central grassed square of the cloister itself – a serene and inaccessible space in the heart of the City.

The Deanery

- 2.4.16 The Deanery enshrines the monastic Prior's house, which incorporates work from all periods including the 13th century chapel and its adjacent 14th century residential range. These ranges were enlarged in later centuries by succeeding Priors and after the Reformation, a number of Deans undertook repairs and improvements without disturbing the essential medieval character of the building.

The WHS: The Cathedral College

- 2.4.17 The Cathedral College is the former outer court of the Benedictine Priory at Durham Cathedral, which became the property of the Dean and Chapter after the Dissolution in the 16th century. Though there is permissive public access across the College into the Cathedral, the atmosphere of the College is private, intimate and tranquil. Smaller and less formal than Palace Green, it is rich in fine buildings that cluster around a series of interlinked open spaces, in which informally grouped large mature trees form an attractive focus. It has a strong community feel, a '*world within a world*', and it comprises the residences of the clerical members of the Chapter and of some Cathedral employees.
- 2.4.18 The College comprises the most architecturally important group of claustral domestic and service buildings in the City and County of Durham. Many of the present properties incorporate substantial remains of the medieval monastic buildings. During and after the Dissolution many of the buildings were adapted and converted to form prebendal houses, though a few remained in service use. During the Interregnum in the following century they were badly neglected, which necessitated major repairs and rebuilding in the late 17th and early 18th centuries. With the exception of the buildings used by the Chorister School, the buildings are now mainly in domestic use for the officials and canons of the Cathedral.

- 2.4.19 The south side of the Cathedral College is lined with what appear to be elegant 18th century houses, with steps and handrails leading to their front doors. In fact, these buildings retain much of their earlier medieval plan and conceal medieval fabric behind their façades. In the southwest corner is the stuccoed and Gothic Revival Choristers' School. The Registry on the west side is castellated and stuccoed (early 19th century). In front of the Registry stands the octagonal Conduit well house, a focal point on the College green, which may have been designed by Sanderson Miller who worked in Durham in the 1750s.
- 2.4.20 Views from the College, apart from the Cathedral rising above the chimney pots to the north, are mostly confined with only occasional glimpses outwards. A mysterious narrow tunnel, the Dark Entry, leads down to the river gorge on the west side.
- 2.4.21 In places the College retains a range of traditional floorscape materials - flagstones, cobbles and setts of varying sizes. These are arranged in strong patterns, which add detail and texture to the landscape.

The WHS: Durham Castle

- 2.4.22 Durham Castle is defined by its original Norman 'motte and bailey' plan and contains several distinct areas within its bounds: including the bulky Castle Keep on the massive earthworks of the 'motte', and a range of other buildings around the semi-trapezoid shaped courtyard that forms the inner bailey. The rugged, somewhat austere appearance of the Castle belies the impressive rich interiors it contains, with many furnishings, artworks, artefacts and books relating to the Castle's long occupation and history.
- 2.4.23 The present buildings were begun after the Norman Conquest in about 1072 by Earl Waltheof at the instigation of William I, as part of his campaign to subdue and control Northern England and the Scottish borders. The Castle was built as a border fortress and after 1076, when the earldom was sold to Bishop Walcher, it also served as a Bishop's Palace until 1836. Thereafter the Castle was ceded to the founding College of the University of Durham (University College) in the 19th century. Extensive restoration and stabilising work was carried out at the Castle in the 1930s, when a general collapse seemed imminent. Recently restoration work has been carried out on the stonework of the North Range, the Norman Doorway and the Gatehouse.

The Gatehouse, Courtyard and Gardens

- 2.4.24 The Castle Courtyard is approached along a driveway from Palace Green, over the site of the former Barbican and dry moat (filled in by Bishop Cosin in the 17th century), and through the Gateway. This

has an elaborately carved Norman arch but the rest is picturesque Gothic of 1790. The courtyard is a small intimate formal space with an oval lawn, enclosed by the Castle buildings. The Castle gardens include the remains of 17th century terraced gardens on the motte.

The Keep

- 2.4.25 Dominant within the Castle Courtyard is the Keep set on its high motte. The first Keep was a wooden structure, rebuilt in stone in the late 14th century by Bishop Hatfield. By the end of the 17th century the role of the Keep as a fortress had become obsolete and it fell into ruinous disrepair. It was rebuilt again in its original irregular octagonal shape by Anthony Salvin in the 1830s, and now provides student residences. The Keep is a four-storey building with lancet windows and along with the Cathedral, is especially dominant on the Durham skyline when viewed from the northeast.

The North and West Ranges

- 2.4.26 The ranges on the north and west sides of the courtyard were built as the Bishop's residence and were altered and added to by successive Bishops. The Great Hall within the west range was rebuilt after 1284, over an earlier Norman undercroft, and was extended in the late 14th century. It is a very large hall entered through an imposing Ionic columned porch above a flight of stone steps. The panelled interior is largely Victorian and now forms the dining hall of the college. However, the surviving Trumpeters Galleries point to its ritual splendour as part of the original Bishop's Palace.
- 2.4.27 In the angle between the north and west ranges is a magnificent late 17th century staircase known as the Black Stairs. This rises through four floors around a large open well. The painted pine balustrades are richly carved with Baroque foliage designs.
- 2.4.28 Bishop Le Pusiet's Hall is located in the north range of the Castle complex, and dates from the late 12th century. It is approached through a ceremonial arch covered in richly decorated rosettes and zigzags, which was restored in the 1980s. The interior was remodelled in the 18th century to form the present Senior Common Rooms and the Senate Room. The latter is hung with Flemish tapestries and is used for University graduations and other official functions. This north range also contains the Tunstal Chapel, which contains part of the original Father Smith organ from the Cathedral and is now used as the College's main chapel. The Tunstal Gallery was added in the mid-16th century by Bishop Tunstal to link the Great Hall with his newly built chapel and belltower. This gallery was enclosed and provided protection for the 12th century doorway to Le Pusiet's Hall, resulting in the remarkable condition of its carved sandstone.

The Norman Gallery and Chapel

- 2.4.29 High up in the Castle's north range is the Norman Gallery. This is a rich and unique example of late-Norman architecture, with its chevroned arches resting on slender columns flanked by window seats. One side of the Gallery has been converted into students' rooms, and these residences are the most highly prized rooms amongst the college's students.
- 2.4.30 From the Norman Gallery a spiral staircase descends to the Norman Chapel, which has been described as "*one of the most powerful expressions of early Norman architecture in the country*". (Roberts 2003). Built of local honey coloured sandstone, the Chapel is divided by two rows of massive circular pillars into a series of small vaulted compartments. The columns have distinctive natural veining and are crowned by carved capitals of lively design, incorporating carvings of diverse animals and humans. This is a very peaceful, special and holy place.

The WHS: Palace Green (Proposed amendment to WHS boundary)

- 2.4.31 Palace Green is a formal open space with a great central lawn that visually unites the Cathedral with the Castle and provides a key part of their setting. The buildings that cluster around the Green form the historic heart of the University. Entering Palace Green from the north along the narrow, enclosed and slightly curving street of Owengate, a dramatic view of the full length of the imposing, north side of the Cathedral suddenly opens up. From the north side of Palace Green, views are dominated by the Castle Keep with its battlements and crenulations.
- 2.4.32 The Palace Green buildings largely date from the 17th century to the present day, but include a rare survival, the 15th century Exchequer building built to house the Bishop's financial accounts and legal records. The Exchequer building is of massive sandstone construction with small twin lancets, relieved by later traceried windows. Adjacent to the Exchequer stands Bishop Cosin's Library, an important building of 1667-70, housing the Bishop's personal library which is laid out in an innovative French manner with original wall bookcases and furnishings (see 2.6.8). Other buildings around the Green exhibit a wide variety of architectural styles and materials, ranging from the brick built Georgian Bishop Cosin's House to the lower, squatter buildings of Bishop Cosin's Almshouses with their mixed Tudor and Gothic motifs. Many of the buildings around the Green have distinctive doors and windows.
- 2.4.33 The character of Palace Green varies depending on the time of the day, largely due to the influence of vehicle traffic on this area. The Green is busy with traffic early in the morning and late afternoon/early evening, and is generally more peaceful at other times. Cars are parked around the outer edge of Palace Green at most times of the day.

- 2.4.34 Owengate and Dun Cow Lane link Palace Green to the North Bailey. Along the north sides of Owengate, the two and three storey houses, some jettied, are hard pressed against the Castle, and are situated in small narrow plots. Both the western side of North Bailey and southern side of Dun Cow Lane are lined by elegant brick, stuccoed or stone houses, which are mainly in University use for its colleges. Dun Cow Lane and most of Owengate have a particularly high quality floorscape of granite setts, cobbles and flagstones.
- 2.4.35 Windy Gap, a narrow alleyway set between the buildings on the west side of Palace Green, allows glimpses of the wooded gorge below and gives access to the riverbanks.

The WHS: Prebends Bridge

- 2.4.36 Prebends Bridge, lying just downstream of the southern meandering loop of the River Wear, links the southwest corner of the peninsula with the outer riverbanks. The bridge was completed in 1778 to replace an earlier bridge destroyed by floods in 1771 (located 50m upstream, on the southern loop of the river), and is named after the Cathedral Prebendaries (canons). Constructed of warm local sandstone it has an elegant classical design by George Nicholson including distinctive stone balustrading that pierces the parapet wall over the summit of each of the three high semi-circular arches.
- 2.4.37 Prebends Bridge is particularly notable for its spectacular and iconic view of the three Cathedral towers, rising above the tree lined river gorge, with the Old Fulling Mill, river and weir below. The siting of the new bridge was probably planned to afford this dramatic view of a romantic landscape. The composition is completed by Framwellgate Bridge, with the countryside that surrounds the City glimpsed in the distance. The view has special associations with famous artists and writers such as JMW Turner and Sir Walter Scott. Night-time views are equally dramatic when the floodlit towers of the Cathedral dominate. Along the riverside below, the eye is often directed towards the bridge by the clarity of the reflections in the still water.
- 2.4.38 Prebends Bridge is approached from the north through the late 18th century semi-circular Water Gate, which provides an arched opening in the Castle Wall. The Water Gate replaced an earlier single arched postern.

The WHS: St Mary the Less and the Parsonage

- 2.4.39 St Mary the Less was originally the parish church of one of the smallest parishes in England. A church was founded on this site in c.1140 by the Bulmers, lords of Brancepeth, and it is thought that it was intended to serve the retainers and fighting men that dwelt in the defended outer bailey, with a parish of just four acres at the southern end of the peninsula. Several late 12th century architectural fragments were saved during the mid-19th century rebuilding of the church: in 1847 the church was restored, using some of this original stone.
- 2.4.40 The church is set on a raised churchyard, raised above the level of the road at the South Bailey that lines its eastern extent. This churchyard is inserted within an indented section of the eastern precinct wall of the Priory. The grassed churchyard provides a tranquil setting for the sandstone church with its slate roof, and includes a wooden cross, some carved horizontal gravestones and a mature beech tree. The whitewashed, partially medieval structure of the Parsonage is located to the west of the entrance steps that lead up to the graveyard.
- 2.4.41 St Mary the Less has recently been internally reordered, following an extensive Faculty permission process that included a Consistory Court held at the church. Though much of the internal furniture was removed during the reordering, the features of artistic merit within the church were retained, including the black oak reredos in the Cosin style; the monument to the Polish dwarf Count Borowlaski, and the 13th century sculpture of Christ in Judgement. As part of the same process the Parsonage was also restored and brought into new use as meditation and storage rooms.

Setting of the WHS: The Immediate Environs

- 2.4.42 The immediate environs of the WHS are:
- The entirety of the historic townscape that dominates the peninsula; and
 - The riverscape of the gorge that surrounds the peninsula.
- 2.4.43 Within the immediate environs of the WHS six distinct component areas have been identified which contribute in different ways to the physical, visual and historic setting of the WHS and to the experience of approaching the WHS. Each of these are described in turn in the following text and their locations are shown on Figure 2.5.

The Bailey

- 2.4.44 The Bailey is an integral part of the defended medieval complex on the peninsula plateau, and consists of the area between the inner Cathedral Priory precinct wall and the outer Castle wall. It is a long medieval street lined with houses, adapted in later centuries, notably in the Georgian era, and which are now largely used for collegiate and teaching purposes relating to the University. Some of the houses are in private ownership.
- 2.4.45 Within the Bailey are two distinct areas: the North Bailey and the South Bailey. North Bailey is straight, whereas South Bailey has a more informal curve. Both have an enclosed character in which buildings press close on either side. As a result the Cathedral towers and the Castle's Keep are only occasionally glimpsed, heightening a sense of anticipation and excitement when approaching the WHS. However, a dramatic view of the east end of the Cathedral and the Chapel of Nine Altars opens up in front of St Chad's College.
- 2.4.46 North Bailey, though much quieter than Saddler Street below it, tends to be busy with relatively high volumes of students and visitors. South Bailey by contrast is generally much quieter and more peaceful. Overall, the streets of North and South Bailey provide a high quality streetscape, although South Bailey with its setts, cobbles and Caithness paving retains more of its original floorscape than North Bailey. To the rear of the buildings along the eastern side of the Bailey there is a more private world of college gardens, courtyards and ancillary buildings bounded on to the east by tree belts at the top of the gorge. From these college grounds there are occasional dramatic views of the Cathedral towers soaring over the domestic college buildings, rooftops and chimneys.

The Peninsula Riverbanks (Inner)

- 2.4.47 These steep riverbanks form the inner edge of the gorge of the River Wear. The steep river gorge was an integral part of the defended medieval complex on the peninsula, and during the medieval period these banks would have been cleared of vegetation for defensive purposes. They were also used for quarrying, mining, milling and fishing, as well as the dumping of rubbish. During the 18th century, trees began to be planted systematically in some areas. As 'romantic' landscapes became fashionable, further pockets of trees were planted and ornamental features created including wellheads, springs, icehouses and the classical temple folly known as the Count's House. A series of terraced gardens and walks were also laid out. These are now tumbled down and overgrown with vegetation.

- 2.4.48 The boathouses of the University and the independent colleges are also a prominent feature of the modern landscape. From the riverbank pathways, occasional glimpsed views open up of the Cathedral rising above the trees, whilst the massive walls of the Castle and of the Cathedral are best appreciated from the western side of the peninsula and the eastern, outer riverbanks.

The River Wear

- 2.4.49 This reach of the River Wear is characterised by the steep narrow gorge through which it has carved its twisting route. It is popular for several river based activities, including school rowing, canoeing, angling and informal recreation, as well as University boat rowing and training. The activities of the school and University boat crews forms a particular feature of its character. The river also includes the weir of the medieval Corn Mill (South Street Mill) and the Old Fulling Mill. The river is crossed in this area by Kingsgate Bridge and Prebends Bridge, both of which provide spectacular views of the Cathedral.

The Outer Riverbanks Green Space

- 2.4.50 The outer riverbanks green space comprises the steep wooded outer banks of the gorge of the River Wear. This riverbank in medieval times would have also been largely kept clear of trees for defensive reasons and the current woodland has developed over the past 300 years. The outer riverbanks have a history of being used for sandstone and coal extraction, and the landscape remains of this activity still survive. From its wooded pathways there are many constantly shifting views and compositions of the Castle and Cathedral as they are revealed through the trees. The juxtaposition of the richly wooded landscape with the Castle and Cathedral achieves high visual quality. The proximity of the water also gives the area a serene, tranquil quality.

The Outer Riverbanks Townscape

- 2.4.51 The outer riverbanks townscape is located at the top edge of the riverbanks. The principal streets are South Street (from which the views to the Site are both impressive and memorable), New Elvet, Church Street and Quarryheads Lane. Whilst presenting different architectural styles to the peninsula, the organic and linear layout of this area unifies its relationship with the peninsula, following the course of the River Wear.
- 2.4.52 Church Street comprises groupings of Georgian frontages and 19/20th century terraces elevated above the river gorge with magnificent views of the west end of the Cathedral. These houses are prominent in views back from the peninsula. The medieval church of St Oswald's dominates the area,

punctuating the greenery of the riverbank. This church has a particularly strong historic relationship with the Cathedral and is highly visible from the peninsula. Quarryheads Lane has a small grouping of mainly 20th century detached and semi detached houses with some glimpsed views of the Cathedral from private rear gardens and the public highway beyond, particularly from open spaces such as Palmers Garth.

- 2.4.53 The west side of New Elvet is dominated by 20th Century architecture including the 'brutalist' Dunelm House and the Durham Elvet Waterside buildings. The spaces between the buildings provide for framed views to the Cathedral and Castle on the peninsula creating a sense of surprise and interrelationship with the WHS.

The Medieval Town Core

- 2.4.54 In addition to the two medieval bridges of Elvet Bridge and Framwellgate Bridge, the medieval town core includes most of the area contained within the original medieval town walls, including the Market Place and Saddler Street. This entire area was extensively remodelled during the 19th century although the street pattern and many of the buildings have survived largely intact from the medieval and post-medieval period.
- 2.4.55 Durham's Market Place, and the streets leading into it (Silver and Saddler Streets) are a traditional mix of 18th and 19th century facades, behind which there is substantial survival of much earlier fabric. The small shops, of narrow burgage plot width, stand side by side with more recently constructed banks and public buildings. This area was the core of the medieval town, surrounded by the compact circuit of town walls. The northern exit through the town walls was at Clayport Gate, situated just beyond the Market Place. The arrangement of spaces and individual features within the Market Place (both monuments and public buildings) make this a relatively unspoiled part of the historic City.
- 2.4.56 With the close urban setting, marked changes in level and curving streets, there is comparatively little visual relationship between the medieval town and the Castle just above it, or outward towards the river. However, from the now partly pedestrianised Framwellgate and Elvet bridges, dramatic views of the Cathedral and Castle are possible, rising above the much smaller scale buildings and roofscapes of the town and silhouetted against the skyline. The narrow streets of the medieval town core create a sense of excitement on the approaches to the WHS before the Cathedral and Castle are revealed again.

Setting of the WHS: The Inner Bowl

- 2.4.57 Beyond the immediate environs of the WHS, the next element of the setting of the WHS is the topographic feature of the Inner Bowl. Most of the City of Durham lies within this bowl, which encircles the City with its moderate to steep slopes, rising to a plateau at approximately 100m OD. The Inner Bowl links the surrounding hilltops of Whinney Hill, Mount Joy, Windmill Hill, Observatory Hill, Flass Vale, Wharton Park, Gilesgate-Pelaw Woods and spans the two sections of the river valley. The edges of the Inner Bowl roughly equate to the area described by the City Centre Conservation Area (see Figure 2.8), though these boundaries diverge in several key locations.
- 2.4.58 To the south and southwest of the Inner Bowl lie various University and other institutional buildings, located in a landscaped setting on land rising up from the gorge. Here frequent views of the Cathedral are possible, rising above the peninsula and its wooded riverbanks in the middle distance. To the east lies the historic street of Old Elvet with views of the Cathedral from outside its imposing classical law courts, and the riverside playing fields with views of the Cathedral and Castle rising above the other historic buildings of the peninsula. To the north west is the A690 approach road and the historic townscape of Claypath and Gilesgate from which the dramatic framed views of the Cathedral and Castle Keep are revealed as they drop down towards the City. To the northeast the views from the railway viaduct on high land are amongst the most memorable panoramas of Durham in which the Cathedral and Castle are dramatically silhouetted against the skyline. Finally, to the west from local areas of green space such as St Margaret's Allotments, the tops of the Cathedral towers peer above the treeline.
- 2.4.59 From close to the rim of the Inner Bowl and nearer in to the WHS there are a number of key vantage points which provide medium to close views of the historic core of the city and the WHS, including the Cathedral and Castle. These vantage points include:
- Views from within the river valley at the Sands;
 - Windmill Hill;
 - Observatory Hill;
 - Wharton Park;
 - Windy Hill;
 - Mountjoy;
 - Old Durham Gardens;
 - Gilesgate;
 - St Aidan's and St Mary's College;

- St Margaret's Allotments; and
- The Railway station and Viaduct.

Setting of the WHS: The Outer Bowl

- 2.4.60 From the top of the Cathedral tower, Durham can be seen to lie within a wider Outer Bowl landscape. This Outer Bowl is again a topographic feature, whose edges are defined by rising ground. Examples of key long distant views to and from this Outer Bowl are those from the A690, Bent House Lane, Shincliffe, Neville's Cross, County Hall and Frankland Farm, lying largely within an approximately 5 km radius. To the south the character of this outer bowl is essentially rural with the City confined to the foreground and with distant settlements situated below the horizons. To the north the character of the bowl is more developed but with significant areas of open countryside including large woodlands and the river valley (see Figure 2.5).
- 2.4.61 Looking towards the Cathedral from the surrounding countryside, where existing vegetation and buildings do not intervene, the degree of visibility of different parts of the Cathedral varies considerably depending on landform. Depending on the local topography, much of the Cathedral may be visible, or only the upper parts or only the Towers.
- 2.4.62 Three broad County Landscape Character Areas provide the context for the views to and from the Outer Bowl (see Figure 2.6).

The East Durham Limestone Plateau

- 2.4.63 This is a gently rolling low plateau of large arable fields and widespread urban development with scattered mining towns and villages lying to the east and northeast of Durham. Views to the Cathedral are limited except where the land begins to shelve slightly more towards the valley of the River Wear, along the A690 west of the A1.

Wear Lowlands

- 2.4.64 This is a broad lowland valley incised by the meandering River Wear and its tributaries. These lie in steep sided wooded gorges and denes that open up in places into broad floodplains overlooked by steep bluffs. From the valley sides and occasionally from the floodplain, distinctive views of the prominent landmark of the Cathedral are possible.

The West Durham Coalfield

- 2.4.65 This is a rolling low upland landscape of ridges and valleys with a strong east/west grain. It includes areas heavily influenced by development with a semi rural or urban fringe character in places and more open ridges of pastoral farmland. A few distant views to the Cathedral tower are possible.

2.5 Intangible Qualities

- 2.5.1 In a time of global concern about cultural distinctiveness, intangible heritage has gained additional importance. To conserve intangible heritage is to conserve the vulnerable indicators of culture; the cultural stores through which our global diversity is transferred from generation to generation.

- 2.5.2 The intangible qualities of the Durham peninsula range from aspects of the history of the WHS to active practices that continue at the WHS. The history of the Durham WHS is rich with historical values, which, though they are no longer practised, have not only moulded the physical form of the Site but are globally significant in their own right. These include the medieval role of the Cathedral as a Chartered Sanctuary; the medieval practice of pilgrimage and the concept of sainthood and cult. Active practices include the continued use of the Site for Christian worship, education and music, and the practice of traditional skills such as masonry and joinery in the conservation of the buildings. Through its long history, the peninsula continues to be an important social centre, providing a gathering space for local, national and international communities.

Spirituality and Sacredness

- 2.5.3 For over 1000 years the peninsula has been used as a religious centre, and the intangible qualities of spirituality and sacredness are conserved at Durham through the routine practice of Christianity and its rituals at the Site. This millennium of sacred history and continual Christian practice are central intangible qualities of the Site. These qualities are manifested in tangible form by the iconic architecture built to house them, and through the books, embroideries, art works and other artefacts made to record, celebrate and facilitate Christian practice.

Education and Knowledge

- 2.5.4 It is most likely that the Durham peninsula has been a centre of learning for the past millennium. Education on the peninsula probably has its roots in the work of the Community of St Cuthbert and continued with the medieval Priory that replaced it. It is known that the monks of Lindisfarne, the Community of St Cuthbert, were famed for their standard of scholarship and for their production of

illuminated texts, with the internationally significant Lindisfarne Gospels surviving as a beacon to their great skill. The Community of St Cuthbert brought both this great book and their skills with them when they left Lindisfarne, and when they settled at Durham over a century later they would have continued this work. The Benedictine monks who replaced the Community of St Cuthbert in 1083 were similarly renowned for their learning and for the provision of education, and between 1390 and 1416 the Cathedral's Choristers' School was established at the Site.

2.5.5 A second aspect of the theme of education is the presence of the Venerable Bede in the Cathedral. Bede wrote the first history of the English Church and people as well as a life of St Cuthbert. Though he neither knew Cuthbert personally nor resided at Durham, Bede has been associated with Durham for the past 800 years, after his bones were stolen from Jarrow in the 11th century and reburied at the Cathedral with St Cuthbert. Bede was given his own shrine at the Cathedral in the 13th century.

2.5.6 One of the celebrated colleges at the University of Oxford now known as Trinity College, was founded by the Cathedral Priory at Durham. The great tradition of education on the Durham peninsula was maintained in 1837 by the donation of the Castle to the University as the founding college of the internationally renowned University of Durham. Since that date the Castle has been used as the historic heart of the University, providing accommodation for students, whilst Palace Green now houses several university departments and libraries.

Cult and Sainthood

2.5.7 St Cuthbert is considered to have been the most popular saint in England prior to the death of Thomas Beckett in 1170. His popularity was not limited to England however, and his feast days were apparently celebrated in many monasteries throughout England and Europe by the late 11th century. Indeed, *"His popularity in Europe is apparent by the number of Lives or (Vitae) which were carefully penned by continental scribes in order that their monastic communities should have a copy. In addition, his name appears in many European Martyrologies, which are liturgical books containing readings on the lives of the saints, and in all parts of England many churches were dedicated to him"* (Marner 2000, 1).

2.5.8 The study of St Cuthbert illustrates that cult is more than simply symbolic, as it is thought that the shrine and land of St Cuthbert became used as a central feature of the identity of a disparate group of peoples who resided on lands given to the Community of St Cuthbert. These geographically dispersed land holdings became known as the Patrimony of St Cuthbert, and by the early 12th century, the people who lived on 'St Cuthbert's land' were identified as *Haliwerfolc*, or 'people of the saint' (Marner 2000, 19).

2.5.9 The cult of St Cuthbert came to mould the lives of many, and became a widespread feature of medieval Christianity across England and into Europe. The cult of St Cuthbert was the inspiration for the construction of Durham Cathedral, as an appropriately grand structure to house his body and relics, and he is still held to be a protector of his community and his people. Indeed, the 'Last Miracle of St Cuthbert', when WWII bombers were diverted from Durham Cathedral by a sudden mist, is celebrated in one of the Cathedral's modern stained glass windows.

Pilgrimage

2.5.10 The shrines of St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede have been the focus of pilgrimage for over a millennium. During this time, pilgrimage has been a defining feature of the history of the Cathedral, the City of Durham and the wider area. Pilgrimage reached its zenith in Durham in the 12th century, when the shrine of St Cuthbert attracted a large number of pilgrims to Durham. When leaving Durham these pilgrims were apparently encouraged by the Prior to visit other shrines to bring back marble slabs with which to adorn the City of Durham.

2.5.11 Pilgrimage was a competitive arena in the medieval period, and it has been argued that the rise of the cult of Thomas Becket at Canterbury stimulated Hugh de Pusiet, Bishop of Durham from 1153-1195, to embark on several ambitious building projects in the attempt to revitalize the cult of St Cuthbert by attracting pilgrims back to Durham. These included the unsuccessful attempt to rebuild the east end of the Cathedral which resulted in the construction of the Galilee Chapel at the west end.

2.5.12 Pilgrimage is a recurring theme of global significance and is:

- A spiritual experience that is central to a large number of religions;
- A mode of cultural meeting and exchange;
- A source of creative inspiration;
- An important economic and social stimulus; and
- The historic origin of tourism.

Sanctuary

2.5.13 Sanctuary is an important theme in the history of the Cathedral, both through the role of prayer in troubled times and through the Cathedral's formal provision of sanctuary. A 12th century account of St Cuthbert by Symeon and Reginald of Durham placed sanctuary at the core of the foundation of the religious settlement at Durham: in a dream, Abbot Eadred, the Keeper of the Shrine of St Cuthbert,

was told by the saint to ask the Viking King, Guthred, who gave the land on the peninsula to the monks, to:

"appoint that my church shall become a safe place of refuge for fugitives, so that any one who flies to my body, for what cause so ever shall have protection there for thirty seven days; and that asylum shall not be violated upon any pretence whatever"

- 2.5.14 Certainly by the 12th century, sanctuary was an important part of the philosophy of the Cathedral, and it is documented that in the period 1464 to 1524, 247 people sought sanctuary. The Cathedral had a special doorknocker for claimants to draw attention to themselves, and they would be taken to a railed-off sanctuary area in the body of the Cathedral close to the monks' night stair. Durham Cathedral was a Chartered Sanctuary until its abolition by King James I in 1624.

Conflict and Reconciliation

- 2.5.15 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS has at its core conflict and reconciliation. The Cathedral and Castle complex is designed as a defensive structure, and has experienced violent warfare several times during its history. There can be no doubt that the united skyline of the Cathedral and Castle, home of the Prince Bishops, powerfully symbolises the unification of political, physical and military strength with the religious power of the church.
- 2.5.16 By contrast, the early cult of St Cuthbert was designed to have reconciliation at its core. It has been argued that whilst Cuthbert himself lived in a time of rift, controversy and conflict within the English church, his life was later reconstructed to give a message of 'Cuthbert the Reconciler' (Brown, undated). It is suggested that when Bishop Eadfrith commissioned Bede to rework the life of St Cuthbert, reconciliation was the new agenda to be worked into the story. This gentle side to the Cuthbert story was elaborated by Reginald of Durham in the late 12th century, who recorded new miracles performed by St Cuthbert since his death, stressing the compassionate and merciful side of Cuthbert's character (Marner 2000, 31).

English Church Music

- 2.5.17 Since St Augustine founded the country's first formal song school in Kent in 597 AD, music has been a central part of the English Christian tradition. Within this Christian tradition music is an essential component of worship, and, composed specifically for this function, English Church Music and its performance have developed their own unique national character. The tradition has been handed down in an unbroken chain to the present day, with the exception of a brief interlude during the 17th

century Commonwealth when church music was largely prohibited. The ongoing practice of English Church Music represents a cultural memory of considerable significance. Cathedrals are now recognised as important reservoirs of this cultural memory, actively conserving the skills and sounds of the English Church Music tradition.

- 2.5.18 Durham Cathedral is recognised as being one of the leading Cathedrals in the country for its musical excellence. It has several choirs, made up of students of the Choristers' School, local residents and members of the University, and possesses one of the finest organs in the north of England. It regularly hosts a wide variety of musical events, such as the recent concert series on 16th century replica organs.

Skills and Trades

- 2.5.19 The active conservation of the structures contained within the WHS requires the skills of a variety of specialist craftspeople, including masons, joiners and stained glass restorers. As these are skills that are not currently in general demand within the UK economy, the active conservation of the WHS represents a living cultural heritage of endangered skills. These skills are not only important for the conservation of the built heritage, but are also significant in their own right, allowing understanding of the intricate skills and knowledge of our ancestors, and enabling insight into their lives.

Creativity and Artistic Expression

- 2.5.20 The WHS has long been an inspiration for creativity and artistic expression, with a vast body of artwork, literature, music and other forms of creative expression created to celebrate the WHS, its associations and its history. The architecture of the Cathedral and the Castle are perhaps the most obvious testament to creative expression at the WHS, however, these large scale tangible expressions must stand alongside the smaller pieces of embroidery, illuminated manuscripts, books, paintings, sculpture, stained glass and silverwork housed at the Site. Creative and artistic expression in the WHS are further supported by St Chad's College, Durham Cathedral, Northern Arts and Sunderland University, who sponsor the Durham Cathedral Artist in Residence. The artist has a studio in the Cathedral precincts but lives in and is a part of St Chad's College

Community

- 2.5.22 The WHS is a central gathering point for the entire community. The WHS acts as a community resource for the holding of events, such as the Miners' Gala, and family gatherings such as weddings, as well as containing the community's place of Christian worship. It enjoys a special place within the

heart of the community of the City of Durham, a sentiment that is passionately expressed by most members of this community.

2.5.23 As the home of a University of international importance, the WHS also stands at the heart of the worldwide Diaspora of University of Durham Alumni. Ex-students of the University hold the WHS in high regard, and many consider it to be a symbol of their university days.

2.5.24 The WHS is home to two residential communities: it is a place of residence for the clerical members of the Cathedral Chapter and some Cathedral employees as well as providing accommodation for students at University College and residences for some of the College's staff.

2.6 Collections

2.6.1 Both the Cathedral and the University house significant portable collections within the WHS. Both the Chapter and the University have developed large collections that relate to their histories, missions and associations. These collections include works of art, books and artefacts of a variety of forms.

The Cathedral

2.6.2 The Cathedral contains many valuable collections directly related to the history of the WHS. These include silverware and embroidery designed and created specifically for the Cathedral; carvings and sculpture, including the Anglo Saxon carved wooden coffin of St Cuthbert; furniture, paintings and other artwork. The Cathedral also houses an important library, which comprises three parts:

- The Sharp Library - which comprises modern theology and is used by students and staff of the University as well as clergy and people in the parishes of the North East region;
- The Chapter Library - which began as the library of the Priory and so comprises many ancient volumes, as well as more modern books of general interest, particularly of the history of the region;
- The Meissen Library of German theology - which is held on behalf of the Church of England to mark the significance of the Meissen Agreement between the Church of England and the Evangelische Kirche Deutschlands and to promote the study of German theology in this country.

2.6.3 As a working church with over 1000 years of history on the same site, the Cathedral has built up a large collection of liturgical furnishings, vestments and vessels. An exhibition of The Treasures of St Cuthbert makes available to the public the principal objects in this collection. This exhibition includes unique artefacts associated with St Cuthbert, including his 7th century Anglo-Saxon coffin with its fine carvings, his pectoral cross, and the outstanding 10th century embroideries given to the shrine by King

Athelstan. The exhibition also contains the Cathedral's original Sanctuary doorknocker and a large collection of embroideries, illustrated manuscripts, silverwork and seals. In addition, the Cathedral also acts as a repository of valuable artefacts from the surrounding diocese, including a large collection of Anglo-Saxon carved stones and crosses. The latter are housed in the Monks' Dormitory, and are on view to the public during the summer months.

The Castle

2.6.4 The Castle houses works of art, books and artefacts relating to the Castle's history. These include paintings of royalty, benefactors and Masters of the college and other significant personages, and objects that would have been in daily use, such as monogrammed crockery donated to the University by Bishop Maltby. Other significant collections include:

- An important collection of 17th century tapestries;
- Silverware;
- Hatchments and coats of arms;
- Wooden and other furnishings;
- Marble and plaster, including a rare collection of 48 miniature panels of the Parthenon Frieze by John Henning;
- Arms and armour from the Bishop's private militia and from the Civil War period;
- A collection of 17th century leather saddles;
- Sporting and other memorabilia;
- A large archive of paper and photographic records relating to the development and ongoing use and conservation of the Site.

2.6.5 There are some 120 paintings in the Castle; the majority of which represent paintings from the collections of Bishops and royalty, and include historic landscape views of the Cathedral and the Castle as well as portraits of significant personages in the history of the WHS and of the nation as a whole. Of particular importance are:

- An early copy of Hugo van der Goes' *The Descent from the Cross*;
- A fine portrait of the 'Hanging Judge' (Sir George Jeffrys); and
- Two landscape views of the Castle and Cathedral attributed to Buck.

The University Libraries

2.6.6 The University Library physically stands in the centre of the WHS (proposed new boundary). Through its collections, the library is also a uniting body between the two great institutions at the Site, holding archives and collections that relate to both the University and the Cathedral. The Library cares for certain University of Durham Records, as well as curating the Durham Cathedral Archives (see below) and holding architectural papers that relate to the Cathedral, Castle and Diocese. The Library cares for various Diocesan Records, including births, marriages, death records and wills, and makes these available to family, local and academic researchers. It also houses:

- A number of political collections, including the Earl Grey archive and the Sudan Papers;
- Family and estate papers relating to the north of England;
- Ecclesiastical papers, including the Cosin Letter Books;
- Antiquarian collections, including the Sharp family's library from Bamburgh Castle;
- Medieval manuscript collections;
- Oriental collections; and
- Scholars' papers.

2.6.7 The University Library houses the Durham Cathedral Archives, including the Dean and Chapter Muniments, which are considered to be the most important medieval archive in the British Isles outside the National Archive. The collection includes examples of the various types of document that were kept by a large monastery supported by extensive estates and with an array of privileges, of which the original archive of Durham's dependency at Coldingham is of outstanding importance. The Muniments also include ephemeral documents, including numerous receipts from the period c.1250 - c.1350 and non-Cathedral documents stored with the Cathedral for safekeeping, and which were never collected, for example the Claxton Deeds. Some key examples of the Cathedral Muniments are available on-line at: <http://www.dur.ac.uk/medieval.documents/>

2.6.8 The Library's 17th century holdings are particularly significant, with the Bishop Cosin Library being a unique surviving example of a French-style 17th century library in Britain. The library was founded between 1667-70 by John Cosin (1595-1672) as an endowed public library for local clergy and people of scholarly interests, and is still housed in its original specially erected building. It is predominantly Cosin's personal collection, but also includes gifts from other benefactors, especially medieval manuscripts from George Davenport (d.1677), printed books from Bishop Richard Trevor (1707-71) and post-medieval manuscripts from Bishop Shute Barrington (1734-1826). The University utilised the building from 1834 and became trustee of the library in 1937. No significant additions have been made

since the early 19th century. The printed stock contains over 5000 titles, with notable treasures including:

- A fine copy of the Shakespeare First Folio acquired by Cosin before 1644;
- A Book of Common Prayer 1619, annotated with Cosin's proposals for the 1662 revision; and
- A 1662 Book of Common Prayer and companion Bible bound by Samuel Mearne for Charles II.

2.6.9 There are c.600 items in French, mostly pamphlets of religious controversy from the period of Cosin's exile in Paris, 1644-60, a considerable number of which are not in the Bibliothèque Nationale in Paris.

St Mary the Less and the Parsonage

2.6.10 St John's College chapel, St Mary the Less, contains a number of interesting art works relating to its history as a parish church and later as a college chapel. Most notable is the 13th Century Sculpture in Hartlepool stone of Christ in Judgement, seated in a mandorla and surrounded by the symbols of the Evangelists.

2.7 Ownership and Management of the WHS

Ownership of the WHS

2.7.1 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is owned and managed by three bodies: the Chapter of Durham Cathedral, the University of Durham and the independent College of St John's. The specific landholdings of these three bodies within the WHS are shown on Figure 2.3. Details of the management structures of these bodies are given in Appendix 3.

Summary of Management Responsibilities

The Cathedral

2.7.2 The Cathedral Chapter owns and manages the Cathedral, its Precinct, College and collections. It also owns Prebends Bridge. In addition to the Cathedral's consultant architect and consultant archaeologist, the local Fabric Advisory Committee and the Cathedrals Fabric Commission for England advise the Chapter in the management of the Cathedral's historic fabric (see 2.8.17). The Cathedral Chapter also employs a resident archaeologist, librarians, and a works team that includes skilled masons.

The Castle and Palace Green

- 2.7.3 The Castle and Palace Green are owned and managed by the University of Durham. The University has an Estates and Buildings Department, with direct responsibility for the external and internal fabric of the buildings on Palace Green, along with the management of the open space of Palace Green. This responsibility extends to the external fabric of the Castle, however the internal fabric of the Castle is managed by the Dean of Colleges. Collections are managed by the Departments on Palace Green and University College at the Castle.

St Mary the Less and the Parsonage

- 2.7.4 St Mary the Less and the Parsonage are managed by the independent college of St John's, who have been granted a faculty lease in perpetuity by the Diocese. The College has managed the buildings since the 1910s when the parish church of St Mary the Less became redundant. The College employs a Head of Maintenance and a consultant architect, and the Diocesan Chancellor has a statutory responsibility for advising on and permitting alterations to the Chapel. The Diocesan Chancellor is in turn advised by the Diocesan Advisory Committee (see 2.8.7).

Other bodies with an Interest in the Site

- 2.7.5 In addition to the Site owners and their advisors, there are a number of other bodies with an interest in the Site. The UK government, through its Department for Culture, Media and Sport (DCMS), has lead responsibility for all WH Sites in the UK and its overseas territories. English Heritage is the government's statutory advisor on all aspects of the historic environment in England, and ICOMOS-UK is funded by English Heritage to give advice on World Heritage issues.
- 2.7.6 City of Durham Council and Durham County Council are responsible for the full range of local authority functions within the area, including planning and conservation, highways and traffic management, economic development and tourism.
- 2.7.7 One NorthEast is the Regional Development Agency and has a strong interest in the Site as a regional driver for tourism and for economic regeneration.

2.8 Planning and Policy Framework

UNESCO

- 2.8.1 In the 1972 *Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage*, UNESCO declared that the *"deterioration or disappearance of any item of the cultural or natural heritage constitutes a harmful impoverishment of the heritage of all the nations of the world."*
- 2.8.2 In order to protect this heritage for future generations the World Heritage List was established (see also Section 1.1). This is administered by the World Heritage Committee, made up of representatives from the various member countries. The World Heritage Committee receives nominations and decides which sites *"are of outstanding interest and therefore need to be preserved as part of the world heritage of mankind as a whole."*
- 2.8.3 The Convention states: *"Each State Party to this Convention recognizes that the duty of ensuring the identification, protection, conservation and transmission to future generations of the cultural and natural heritage referred to in Articles 1 and 2 and situated on its territory belongs primarily to that State. It will do all it can to this end, to the utmost of its own resources and, where appropriate, with any international assistance and co-operation, in particular, financial, artistic, scientific and technical, which it may be able to obtain"* (UNESCO 1972, Article 4)

Government Guidance

- 2.8.4 The UK government has a legislative framework for the protection of the historic environment. The government has developed policies for the implementation of this legislation. At national level these are encompassed within *Planning and Policy Guidance Note 15 (PPG 15) Planning and the Historic Environment (DOE and Department of National Heritage, 1994)* and *Planning and Policy Guidance Note 16 (PPG 16) Archaeology and Planning (DoE, 1990)*.
- 2.8.5 In addition to encouraging the creation of WHS Management Plans, *PPG 15*, which applies to England and not Wales, urges local planning authorities to produce specific planning policies for WHS and to include them in their development plans:

"Policies should reflect the fact that all these sites have been designated for their outstanding universal value, and they should place great weight on the need to protect them for the benefit of future generations as well as our own. Development proposals affecting these sites or their setting may be compatible with this objective, but should always be carefully scrutinised for their likely affect on the

site or its setting in the longer term." (PPG 15 Part 1 Development Plans and Development Control 2.22 World Heritage Sites).

- 2.8.6 Although *PPG 16* does not specifically mention WH Sites, it lays down the recommendations for development plans and policies for dealing with archaeological remains, which are often a component part of cultural WHS. It establishes that where archaeological remains are of national importance there should be a presumption in favour of their physical preservation *in situ*.

Planning Control and the Church of England

Ecclesiastical Exemption

- 2.8.7 All churches, including Cathedrals, are subject to planning law, and planning permission is required for operational development or change of use, regardless of the denomination or faith. However, since the 1913 *Ancient Monuments Consolidation and Amendment Act*, church buildings of certain denominations (including the Church of England) are accorded ecclesiastical exemption from:

- Listed building consent;
- Conservation area consent for the demolition of unlisted ecclesiastical buildings in conservation areas;
- Provisions relating to urgent repairs, repairs notices and Compulsory Purchase Order procedures;
- Temporary listing;
- Criminal liability under Section 59 of the Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990.

- 2.8.8 These exempted church buildings are defined by the 1913 Act as being those that "*for the time being, [are] used for ecclesiastical purposes*". Church of England private chapels are not automatically accorded exemption, but may opt into the faculty jurisdiction system (see below) if they so choose. For the Church of England, ecclesiastical exemption applies to the following, however, if an object or structure attached to the building or within the curtilage is independently listed, exemption does not apply:

- Any church building within the faculty jurisdiction;
- Any object or structure within such a building;
- Any object of structure attached to the outside of such a building;

- Any object or structure within the curtilage of such a church building although not fixed to the building.

2.8.9 Durham Cathedral and the Cloisters enjoy ecclesiastical exemption as does the Chapel of St Mary the Less, which is now a private chapel for St John's College, but which has opted into the faculty jurisdiction.

2.8.10 Under the Ecclesiastical Exemption Order 1990, a certain procedural code needs to be applied when doing works to exempted buildings, including having a body independent of the church council that proposes the changes; public advertisement of the changes and the maintenance of records of decisions. The process of ecclesiastical exemption is currently under review by DCMS.

Care of Cathedrals

2.8.11 Durham Cathedral is subject to the *Care of Cathedrals Measure 1990* and the *Care of Cathedrals Rules 1990*, and lies outside the faculty jurisdiction system (see below). Under Section 2 of the Measure, the Cathedral body must obtain prior approval of any proposed works that will materially affect:

- The architectural, archaeological, artistic or historic character of the Cathedral church, or any building within the precinct of the Cathedral church which is for the time being used for ecclesiastical purposes;
- The immediate setting of the Cathedral church;
- Any archaeological remains (as defined by the Measure) within the precinct of the Cathedral church.

2.8.12 There are two key bodies for approving works at a cathedral: the Cathedral's own Fabric Advisory Committee (FAC), and the Cathedrals Fabric Commission for England (CFCE). The CFCE advises the Chapter on matters relating to the care, conservation and development of the Cathedral, and, under the *Care of Cathedral Rules* certain types of proposals need to be referred to the CFCE for approval. These types of proposals include those that impact upon special historic or archaeological interests. The Chapter is legally bound by the judgments of the CFCE. The FAC also advises on the care, conservation and development of the Cathedral, and determines applications for approval of those proposed works not referred to the Commission. Whilst they are statutory advisers to the Chapter, the Chapter is not bound by the recommendations of the FAC.

2.8.13 The Chapter is the key body for managing Durham Cathedral, and they have a statutory duty of care to ensure that necessary repairs and maintenance of the Cathedral and its contents are appropriately carried out.

Diocesan Faculty Jurisdiction

2.8.14 As outlined above, the Church of England has Ecclesiastical Exemption from Listed Building Controls. In place of Listed Building Controls the Church operates its own permission system, called Faculty Jurisdiction, which is recognised by the Secretary of State. This system is governed by canon law, ecclesiastical law and heritage law, and the laws and canons of the Church of England planning system require the sanction of Parliament before coming into force.

2.8.15 All Church of England diocesan consecrated buildings, land and other churches licensed for public worship since 1 March 1993, except for Cathedrals, are subject to faculty jurisdiction. Buildings that are subject to faculty jurisdiction enjoy the status of ecclesiastical exemption (see above) from Listed Building Controls, however they still need to apply for planning permission for operational developments or change of use.

2.8.16 For those Church of England properties that are within the faculty jurisdiction system, changes to these properties are subject to planning permission (as above) and faculty approval must also be obtained (*Care of churches and Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction Measure 1991*). A faculty is a permissive right to undertake works to a church building or its contents and is obtained through consultation with a planning structure that includes a Diocesan Advisory Committee (DAC) of specialist advisors and representatives of the national amenity societies and the local authorities. The functions of the DAC are set out in the *Care of Churches Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction Measure 1991*, and as well as providing advice on faculty applications, this body also appoints the quinquennial inspectors for the care and conservation of church buildings. The faculty process passes the final decision and grant of a faculty to the Diocesan Chancellor; the DAC has a purely advisory function.

2.8.17 Works on the *De Minimis* list agreed by the Diocesan Chancellor, through discussion with the DAC, are exempt from faculty jurisdiction and usually include:

- Maintenance and cleaning of churchyards;
- Introduction or removal of moveable items;
- Certain types of repair and maintenance of certain areas of the church fabric and boundary walls.

- 2.8.18 Faculties may be applied for retrospectively, though the faculty system allows for civil, criminal and internal disciplinary procedures to be applied in the case of unauthorised works. As this Church of England planning control system extends to all diocesan places of worship, irrespective of their heritage status, and applies to interiors, exteriors and some contents such as organs. It has a far wider remit than the existing secular controls and provides access to a wide range of high quality specialist advice.
- 2.8.19 Currently, the college chapel of St Mary the Less is the only building within the WHS to which diocesan faculty jurisdiction applies. There is a question over the application of faculty jurisdiction and ecclesiastical exemption to the two chapels in the Castle. Currently the Diocesan Registry treats these as private college chapels, whereby the institution can choose to opt into the faculty system if they so wish. The University and University College have not currently chosen to take this step and the institutions treat the buildings as private chapels, applying to City of Durham Council for the usual listed building controls.

Designations

- 2.8.20 The Cathedral, Castle and Prebends Bridge are Grade I Listed Buildings, and the WHS contains many other Grade I, Grade II* and Grade II Listed Buildings within its bounds. These are shown on Figure 2.6. Prebends Bridge and the Water Gate are also Scheduled Monuments (Figure 27). The entire WHS lies within the *Durham (City Centre) Conservation Area*. This gives the components of the WHS additional protection through local planning policy and national legislation.
- 2.8.21 Listed Buildings are protected nationally by the *Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990* and as Scheduled Monuments, Prebends Bridge and the Water Gate are also protected by the *Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act (AMAA) 1979*.

Listed Building Controls

- 2.8.22 The chapel of St Mary the Less, Durham Cathedral and its cloisters are exempt from listed building controls (LBC), though all other buildings within the Cathedral Precinct and College are not exempted and are subject to the usual LBC procedures. The Parsonage associated with the chapel of St Mary the Less is subject to LBC, as are the buildings of the Castle and Palace Green, including the two private chapels within the Castle (see 2.8.7).

2.8.23 Under listed building controls (LBC), permission for alterations that would alter the character of the building must be sought from City of Durham Council; this can include alterations to both the exterior and interior of the building and demolition of part or all of the building. Changes of use do not necessarily require LBC, unless they will affect the character of the building's special architectural or historic interest. LBC is not an alternative to planning permission, which may also be required. English Heritage is a statutory consultee for all Grade I and Grade II* Listed Buildings and demolition of a principal part of a Grade II building is also notifiable. When demolition is involved, City of Durham Council also needs to consult with the five national amenity societies (The Ancient Monuments Society; The Council for British Archaeology; The Georgian Group; The Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings; The Victorian Society). City of Durham Council also has a responsibility to consider the setting of Listed Buildings, when considering planning applications, and again City of Durham Council must contact English Heritage before granting planning permission for development that it believes would affect the setting of a Grade I or II* listed building. City of Durham Council's Local Plan also contains policies that relate to Listed Buildings (see 2.8.28).

Scheduled Monuments

2.8.24 As with Listed Buildings, Scheduled Monuments are protected by national legislation (the 1979 Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act (as amended) - AMAA) and by local policies in the Local Plan. Scheduled Monument Consent (SMC) needs to be obtained from the Secretary of State for Culture, Media and Sport before works to Scheduled Monuments are carried out, unless these works are permitted (class consents). Class consents are restricted in their application and refer to specific activities such as agriculture. When a building is both listed and scheduled, SMC over-rides the need for Listed Building Consent. SMC applications need to be made to DCMS, and English Heritage is the statutory advisor for SMC applications.

Conservation Areas

2.8.25 Conservation Areas (see Figure 2.8) are subject to a number of planning controls. These include the need to gain Conservation Area Consent before the demolition of unlisted buildings within a Conservation Area. The Local Plan of the Local Authority is required to give clear guidance about the effect that a conservation area may have on development proposals (see 2.8.31). There are certain permitted development rights for householders in Conservation Areas, and these include certain changes to houses used as single-family accommodation; houses that are not in single family occupation, and industrial and warehouse land and buildings. The Local Authority designates Conservation Areas, and has responsibility for the conservation of that area through planning control.

Other Designations

- 2.8.26 A part of the riverbank is under consideration for inclusion in the English Heritage Register of Historic Parks and Gardens. Currently the riverbanks fall within the Durham Area of High Landscape Value and are a County Geological Site.

Planning Policy

Regional Planning Guidance

- 2.8.27 The 2002 *Regional Planning Guidance for the North East* (RPG1 - 2002) recognises the significance of Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and the importance of dealing with issues affecting it in the Local and Structure Plans.
- 2.8.28 RPG1 considers the Durham Cathedral and Castle site to be a regional asset, working with the other world-class heritage sites and buildings in the region to provide "*positive images and attracting resources to the region*" (paragraph 1.41).

"The region has an outstanding historic heritage with many areas of national and international significance, including the two WH Sites at Durham Cathedral and Castle and Hadrian's Wall. ...

This heritage is an important environmental, educational and cultural resource for the region. The priorities are:

- To support investment to ensure that it is properly conserved, recorded, understood and, where appropriate, interpreted; and*
- To support the preparation of Management Plans, area-based funding programmes such as Conservation Area Partnerships Schemes and Heritage Economic Regeneration Schemes, and individual heritage restoration projects to conserve and restore the region's historic heritage as an integral part of its future development." (RPG1 – 2.43)*

- 2.8.29 RPG1 also contains a specific policy for the Durham Castle and Cathedral WHS:

ENV 16: The Durham Castle and Cathedral World Heritage Site

The Durham County Structure Plan and the Durham City Local Plan should contain policies that reflect and are compatible with the proposed management plan for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS.

Regional Spatial Strategy

2.8.30 The North East Assembly has prepared 'VIEW: Shaping the North East', the Draft Submission of the Regional Spatial Strategy (RSS) which was published for consultation in June 2005. The Draft Submission RSS gives clear support to conserving, enhancing and capitalising upon the region's diverse built environment, heritage and culture, including WH Sites. The RSS acknowledges the important role of the historic environment in contributing to economic growth, regeneration, health and quality of life in the North East.

2.8.31 In relation to WH Sites, the current RSS Draft submission notes that:

'The North East contains some of the world's finest heritage assets, home of two of Britain's 16 World Heritage Sites – Durham Castle and Cathedral and Hadrian's Wall. Furthermore, the case for a third, centred on Monkwearmouth and Jarrow, based on the world-wide significance on the life and works of the Venerable Bede, is currently being put forward. These sites are of significant value nationally and internationally, and have significant benefits to the region's economy through tourism; and their maintenance, enhancement and jointly be a range of agencies responsible for plans and programmes in the surrounding area; for example English Heritage has published Hadrian's Wall World Heritage Site Management Plan 2002-2007.'

2.8.32 In addition, Policy 34 – Historic Environment states that:

'Strategies, plans and programmes should seek to conserve and enhance the historic environment of the region by:

- a) clearly identifying and assessing the significance of heritage assets and their vulnerability to change;
- b) using the process of characterisation to understand their contribution to the local environment and to identify options for their sensitive management;
- c) encouraging the refurbishment and re-use of disused or under-used buildings and incorporating them into regeneration schemes; and
- d) seeking to preserve, in situ, archaeological sites of national importance and, where appropriate, other archaeological remains of regional and local importance; and
- e) recognising the opportunities for business, education and tourism.

Strategies, plans and programmes should adopt an approach of informed management to maintain and enhance the North east's built heritage by preparing Management Plans by April 2007 for all of the region's World Heritage Site designations, outlining the objectives and delivery proposals for each site.

Local authorities should:

- f) prepare, and regularly maintain registers of Grade II listed building 'at risk'; for their areas, and pursue policies and measures which seek to repair and remove all grades of building from 'at risk' registers through repair;*
- g) consider preparing, and regularly maintaining, lists of locally important buildings for their areas, and set out policies in LDFs, which seek, as far as possible, their protection against inappropriate change;*
- h) consider preparing Conservation Area Appraisals for existing and proposed conservation areas, and proceed to the preparation of Management Plans for the delivery of improvement to those areas;*
- i) consider preparing lists of locally important registered landscapes, Historic Landscape Character Assessments and Conservation Management Plans for historic designated landscapes; and*
- j) consider preparing urban surveys of historic towns and other substantial settlements, to improve knowledge of their entire historic fabric as a guide to ensure future development maximises the potential for preservation, protection and enhancement.'*

County Durham Structure Plan

- 2.8.33 The *County Durham Structure Plan (1991-2006)* acknowledges the importance of keeping the character of Durham as a historic city. This includes preserving its famous views and green belt as an essential setting for the WHS and the historic City centre. The landscape setting has been designated as an Area of High Landscape Value (AHLV) and as such the Plan seeks to ensure that any justifiable development within the AHLV does not detract from the Area's special character.

Policy 60 - 'The character and setting of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS are of international importance and must be safeguarded for future generations by:

- 'a. ensuring that development within the historic centre of Durham City is of a quality, nature and style appropriate to the World Heritage Site, its character and setting; and*
- b. protecting and maintaining important views of the World Heritage Site and its backgrounds'*

Policy 65 – The Character of the Built Environment.

'The character and appearance of the built environment should be enhanced and where appropriate protected.' This policy applies particularly to Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas.

Policy 66 – Archaeology

'Scheduled Ancient Monuments or other archaeological remains of national importance, including their settings, should be preserved in situ and, where appropriate, enhanced.'

City of Durham Local Plan

- 2.8.34 The *City of Durham Local Plan* was adopted in April 2004. The *City of Durham Local Plan* includes policies regarding the protection and development of the WHS:

Policy E3 – Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its setting will be protected by:

- '1. Restricting development to safeguard local and long distance views to and from the Cathedral and Castle and peninsula in accordance with policies E1, E5, E6, E10, E23 and E24; and*
- 2. Applying policies E1, E5, E6, E10, E21, E22, E23 and E24 relating to green belt, landscape setting, conservation areas, Listed Buildings and archaeological remains; and*
- 3. Seeking the conservation and management of buildings, archaeological remains, woodland and open spaces which make up the World Heritage Site and its setting.'*

Policy E4 - World Heritage Site Extension

'The Council will seek an extension to the inscribed area of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS'

Policy E6 – Durham (City Centre) Conservation Area.

'The special character, appearance and setting of Durham (City Centre) Conservation Area will be preserved or enhanced...'

Policy E23 – Listed Buildings.

'The Council will seek to safeguard Listed Buildings and their settings...'

Policy E24 – Scheduled Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Remains.

'The Council will preserve Scheduled Ancient Monuments and other nationally significant archaeological remains and their setting in situ...'

Forthcoming Changes to the UK Planning System

- 2.8.35 The planning policy framework provided by RPG1, the Structure Plan and Local Plan for controlling development within and around the WHS is considered adequate under the provisions of current national planning policy guidance and legislation. However, the current ongoing reform of the UK planning system creates uncertainty in relation to the level of protection afforded to WHS, though it is unlikely that the intention of these reforms would be to diminish the protection afforded to WHS and their settings. For a more detailed outline of reforms see Appendix 10.
- 2.8.36 Over the coming years, a new '*Planning Policy Statement*' will replace *Planning Policy Guidance Notes 15 and 16*, a new statutory '*Regional Spatial Strategy*' will replace the current *Regional Planning Guidance* and the *County Durham Structure Plan*, and a new '*Local Development Framework*' (LDF) will replace the *City of Durham Local Plan*.

2.9 Other Relevant Plans and Studies

The 'Strategic Vision for County Durham'

- 2.9.1 The County Durham Strategic Partnership (CDSP) is an official body consisting of representatives from public, private, voluntary and community organisations who are committed to working together for the benefit of the County and its people. In early 2003 the CDSP commissioned a study entitled the '*Strategic Vision for County Durham*', a long-term plan which seeks to address the future of the County in 29 years time. As part of this vision it envisages that the County would work to become "*the region's fastest growing shopping and leisure destination [where] new developments in key locations have created the most attractive shopping and leisure destination in the North.*" Improvements and expansion to the quality and range of shopping and leisure provision in Durham City are seen as fundamental to enhancing the shopping experience and the realisation of this vision.

Durham Partnership Studies

- 2.9.2 The Durham City Partnership is an informal group comprising representatives from City of Durham Council, Durham County Council, One NorthEast, Durham University and Durham Cathedral. The Partnership was created out of a desire to promote a more visionary and integrated approach to carrying out regeneration and development within Durham City.
- 2.9.3 The Durham City Steering Group is looking to build on the work undertaken as part of the CDSP strategic visioning study and also on that of the County Durham Economic Partnership's work on urban

renaissance. The County Durham Economic Partnership is a sub-group of the CDSP. It is believed that Durham City presents a major opportunity: it is already a popular visitor destination, but it is perceived that it has the potential to capture much more in terms of visitor numbers and visitor spend. It is believed that Durham City requires a vision and substantial investment in order to achieve this perceived latent potential.

2.9.4 Accordingly, the Durham City Steering Group has commissioned a series of studies with the view to fundamentally transform Durham City as a visitor destination. The aim is to build on the many existing cultural and historic assets the City possesses to create a unique visitor destination that offers a quality shopping and leisure experience. The key aims of the project are:

- To generate spending, create jobs and raise regional prosperity;
- To improve the quality of life for local people - whether permanent or transient;
- To make Durham a more attractive place to visit, live, work and study; and
- To promote sustainable development.

2.9.5 The Durham City Steering Group has commissioned three independent studies, in 2004, which are working in parallel to provide integrated solutions for the City. The *'Accessibility Study'* is assessing accessibility issues within the City, and barriers to accessing the City from outside. The *'New Retail and Leisure Offer'* is seeking to present the alternative futures for retailing and leisure that could be developed in Durham City. The *'Development Audit'* is seeking to address the land use potential offered in the Durham City area with the view to improving the retail and leisure offer.

2.9.6 The WHS forms the core of the City of Durham, and is therefore a central component of the developing studies: the future sustainable management of the WHS and its Outstanding Universal Value has the potential to make a powerful contribution to the wider regeneration needs of the City. The emerging strategies also have the potential to conserve, or damage, the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS. It is therefore important that the projects contained in the emerging strategies are carefully designed to conserve the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the Site, whilst the future management of the WHS also takes care to maximise opportunities for contributing to the wider needs of the City.

The Durham Riverbanks Management Plan

2.9.7 The Durham Riverbanks Management Plan is a strategic document, created by a partnership of landowners, statutory agents and others; to conserve and enhance the landscape, habitat, archaeology, architecture and wooded areas of the Durham Peninsula Riverbanks. The management

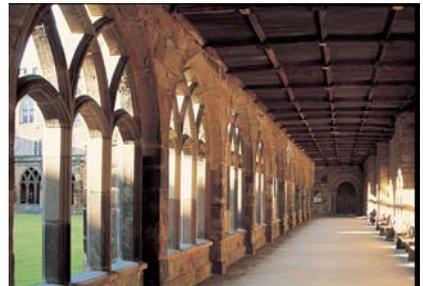
group was formed in 1992 and the current Management Plan was agreed in 2002. Partners in the Plan include City of Durham Council; Durham University and the independent Colleges; Durham Cathedral; Durham County Council; Durham City Arts and the Environment Agency.

2.9.8 The Durham Riverbanks Management Plan has been written to identify the special interest and sense of place of the riverbanks within the heart of the historic City of Durham. It includes a set of practical objectives and policies to ensure the survival of this asset in a sustainable manner, balancing the needs of the natural and built environment with the needs of a wide and diverse range of users. It aims to coordinate the conservation and enhancement of the riverbanks through sustainable and coordinated management and partnership working, under the auspices of the Durham Riverbanks Working Group.

2.9.9 The Plan recognises the important role the Riverbanks play in the setting of the WHS, and holds the conservation of the WHS and its setting as one of its key tenets.

2.9.10 Key aims and objectives addressed by the Riverbanks Management Plan include:

- The management of the riverbanks, including improving the stability of the riverbanks and managing the woodland;
- Conserving the flora and fauna of the riverbanks;
- To conserve and manage the built and landscape heritage of the riverbanks, including the restoration of the 18th and 19th century riverbank gardens;
- The management of access and footpath maintenance;
- The provision of appropriate furniture, fencing, lighting and public art;
- The management of litter;
- The provision of interpretation, publications and directional signage.



3.0 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE SITE

3.0 SIGNIFICANCE OF THE SITE

3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 This section of the plan defines the many and varied significances of the WHS and through an analysis of the Justification for Inscription and Inscription Criteria proposes a new Statement of Outstanding Universal Value (SOUV) and Assessment of Related Values for the WHS. The proposed SOUV provides a detailed exploration of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site, whilst the Assessment of Related Values outlines the local, regional and national values that are of importance at the Site and which need to be actively managed, but which do not comprise part of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value.

Defining Outstanding Universal Value and Significance

3.1.2 The definition of Outstanding Universal Value is of central importance to the WHS Management Plan, as the Plan exists primarily to conserve and sustain this global significance. For this purpose, the Management Plan outlines the objectives and actions contained in Section 4.0.

3.1.3 The World Heritage Convention (WHC) first introduced the concept of Outstanding Universal Value. Although the Convention supplies no specific definition of Outstanding Universal Value, it is generally considered that it is the combination of key significances related to a monument or site that together give it global significance and hence Outstanding Universal Value for the whole of humanity. Through its Operational Guidelines the World Heritage Committee (WHC) established criteria for the assessment of Outstanding Universal Value.

3.1.4 The Outstanding Universal Value of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS, as recognised by the WHC, was defined at the time of nomination by the Justification for Inscription and the criteria under which the Site was inscribed (see Section 3.2) together with the comments made in the ICOMOS evaluation of the nomination. As both the World Heritage Criteria and the understanding of a Site change through time, both the Justification and the Criteria for Inscription are historical documents, reflecting understanding of the Site at the time of inscription. Since the inscription of the Site in 1986, there has been a substantial increase both in understanding the concept of significance, and understanding the significances of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS. Kate Clark provides a summary of current thinking on the application of the concept of significance:

"Historic buildings and their landscapes are significant for many cultural reasons: for their architecture, for their archaeological significance, for their aesthetic qualities, for their association with people and memories, belief and events or simply because they are old. They can tell us about technology, innovation, conflict and triumphs. ... That significance may be personal, local, regional, national or international, it may academic, economic or social" (Clark 2001, 12)

3.1.5 Due to these changes in understanding about the concept and the Site, the Outstanding Universal Value of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is now considered to be broader than the definition provided by the Justification and Criteria outlined in Section 3.2. This Management Plan therefore proposes a new SOUV for the Site, which details the Outstanding Universal Value outlined by the Justification and Criteria, and which also contains new understandings developed since 1986. Only the WHC can approve a change to the defined Outstanding Universal Value of a WHS.

3.1.6 It is proposed that the State Party recommends to the WHC that the new SOUV for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is formally recognised by the WHC alongside the Justification for Inscription and Criteria, and that these three elements are taken as a definitive statement of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value. The proposed SOUV takes into account the boundary amendment proposed in Section 2.2, and could be presented to the World Heritage Committee along with the formal request for the proposed amendment to the Site's boundary (see Objective 2).

Related Significances

3.1.7 The proposed new SOUV for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS only contains those significances that considered to be of Outstanding Universal Value. However, it is the case that the Site also contains a number of other significances, which though they are not of Outstanding Universal Value, are important to the Site. These related significances are outlined in the Assessment of Wider Significance, presented at the end of this section. Along with the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site, these related significances also need to be conserved and sustained by the Management Plan.

3.2 Justification and Criteria

3.2.1 The nomination of Durham Cathedral and Castle for inclusion on the World Heritage List (DoE 1985) provided a Justification for Inscription. Along with the World Heritage Criteria (see below), this justification forms the basis for the inscription of the Site and definition of its Outstanding Universal Value.

Original Justification for Inscription (1985)

Durham Cathedral is the finest example of Early Norman Architecture in England. However, although Romanesque in origin, the introduction of rib vaults, the use of the structural pointed arch and of lateral abutments (in effect diminutive flying buttresses albeit concealed within the roofs of the galleries) all dating to the years 1137-39, represent the first stage in developments which revolutionised the architecture of Europe.

St Cuthbert, who is buried in the Cathedral, was a key figure in the conversion of England to Christianity and played much the same role in the north of the country that St Augustine played in the south. His relics include some of the oldest surviving embroidery in Europe. The Cathedral also contains the tomb of the Venerable Bede (673-735), another influential figure, whose historical writings are of crucial importance to knowledge of Dark Age Britain.

In architectural terms the Castle is less important, but visually it dramatically illustrates the concept of the motte and bailey castle, it includes features of notable architectural interest such as the Norman chapel (the oldest building in Durham), the Norman gallery and the richly decorated entrance to the original Great Hall and it demonstrates in structural terms the change of function from castle to palace to university. However it is in relationship to the Cathedral that its justification lies, since, towering over the town in truly awesome fashion, they symbolise together the spiritual and secular powers of the Bishops Palatine in a manner which, once seen, will never be forgotten.

- 3.2.2 It should be noted that the original Justification for Inscription contained a minor error about the dates of sections of the Cathedral, and that the presence of the flying buttresses has since been disproved. It is now believed that the date range for the rib vaults and the structural pointed arches mentioned in the first paragraph of the Justification for Inscription should be the years 1093-1133.

Criteria

- 3.2.3 Justification for inscription onto the list of WH Sites is dependent on the nominated Site meeting one or more of six predefined criteria, set out by the World Heritage Committee. The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS was inscribed on the World Heritage List in 1986 under three criteria (ii, iv, vi). The justification for inscription under these three criteria was not included in the original nomination document (DoE 1985), however the ICOMOS evaluation (ICOMOS 1986) of the nomination does

explore the reasons for inscription. This ICOMOS evaluation is reproduced below each criterion in the section below.

Criterion ii)

Exhibit an important interchange of human values, over a span of time or within a cultural area of the world, on developments in architecture or technology, monumental arts, town-planning or landscape design.

"Durham Cathedral is the largest and most perfect monument of "Norman" style architecture in England. The small castral chapel for its part marks a turning point in the evolution of 11th century Romanesque sculpture".

Criterion iv)

Be an outstanding example of a type of building or architectural or technological ensemble or landscape which illustrates (a) significant stage(s) in human history.

"Though some wrongly considered Durham Cathedral to be the first "Gothic" monument (the relationship between it and the churches built in the Ile-de-France region in the 12th century is not obvious), this building, due to the innovative audacity of its vaulting, constitutes - as do Spire [Speyer] and Cluny - a type of experimental model which was far ahead of its time."

Criterion vi)

Be directly or tangibly associated with events or living traditions, with ideas, or with beliefs, with artistic and literary works of outstanding universal significance.

"Around the relics of Cuthbert and Bede, Durham crystallized the memory of the evangelising of Northumbria and of primitive Benedictine monastic life."

3.3 Proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value

3.3.1 The proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS consists of three main sections: a summary; an overview and a description of Outstanding Universal Value of the Site on a component by component basis. As noted above, Palace Green has been included in the Statement.

Summary of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Durham Cathedral and Castle World Heritage Site

The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is of Outstanding Universal Value for the combination of the following cultural qualities:

- The Site's exceptional architecture demonstrating architectural innovation;
- The visual drama of the Cathedral and Castle on the peninsula and the associations of the Site with notions of romantic beauty;
- The continuity of use and ownership of the Site over the past 1000 years as a place of religious worship, learning and residence;
- The Site's role as a political statement of Norman power imposed upon a subjugate nation, as one of the country's most powerful symbols of the Norman Conquest of Britain;
- The physical expression of the spiritual and secular powers of the medieval Bishops Palatine that the defended complex provides;
- The relics and material culture of the three saints buried at the Site;
- The Site's extensive collections of objects that reflect its history of patronage and secular and ecclesiastical power;
- The importance of the site's archaeological remains, which are directly related to the Site's history and continuity of use over the past 100 years;
- The cultural and religious traditions and historical memories associated with the relics of St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, and with the continuity of use and ownership of the Site over the past millennium.

Overview of Outstanding Universal Value

3.3.2 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is spectacularly sited on a defended rocky peninsula set overlooking a wooded gorge in a bend in the River Wear. This unique combination of iconic buildings and geographical location has created a visual dramatic internationally recognisable skyline, and one of the finest urban panoramas; an unparalleled experience of architecture and natural form.

3.3.3 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS comprises the architecturally innovative and outstanding Cathedral and Castle separated but united by Palace Green. This ensemble is not only an important early example of landscape architecture but also comprises a significant example of medieval town planning within a defended complex.

- 3.3.4 The Site is the physical expression of the secular and religious powers of the medieval Bishops Palatine, or Prince Bishops, whose power had its roots in the Norman Conquest. Indeed, the Site stands as a political statement of Norman power imposed upon a subjugate nation, and is one of the country's most powerful symbols of the Norman Conquest of Britain.
- 3.3.5 Since before the Norman Conquest, the Site has developed over a millennia of continual use as a place of religious worship, residence and learning. It is the final resting place of two of the country's most important Saxon saints, Saint Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, along with the head of the evangelising warrior king, St Oswald, and houses the relics and material culture associated with these historic religious figures. Cultural and religious traditions associated with these saints are still followed at the Site, and their historical memory continues to be celebrated. The wealth of archaeological remains and collections of books and material culture that are conserved at the Site, and which relate to the Site's continual use over the past 1000 years, are an important aspect of the integrity and authenticity of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS.

The Cathedral Church - Architectural Innovation and Sacred Power

"I unhesitatingly gave Durham my vote for best cathedral on planet Earth." (Bill Bryson).

- 3.3.6 The Cathedral is the burial place of two of England's most important saints: St Cuthbert, the greatest of the northern saints and focus of a major pilgrimage; and St Bede, one of the country's earliest chroniclers and historians. It contains the relics associated with these Saints, including the embroidery from St Cuthbert's tomb, which is the oldest surviving embroidery in Europe. The Cathedral also contains the remains of St Oswald, the warrior king and Christian martyr.
- 3.3.7 The presence at Durham of St Cuthbert, St Bede and St Oswald symbolises the influence and importance of Anglo-Saxon Northumbria as one of the first centres of Christianity in Britain, a tradition that has been maintained at the Cathedral for over 1000 years: since the 10th century arrival of the body of St Cuthbert at the peninsula, the Site has been the site of continual Christian worship. Durham Cathedral's primary purpose remains to be the focus for Christian worship and witness within the region.

Durham *"represents the ultimate fulfilment of that tendency towards articulation which had driven Romanesque architects forward for over a hundred years."* (Sir Nikolaus Pevsner).

- 3.3.8 The Cathedral church was at the time of its construction, and remains today, one of the most important Romanesque buildings in Europe, and the pre-eminent example of the Anglo-Norman style. Romanesque architecture is important in Western Europe as a key developmental stage in Old World architecture, during which technical innovations to allow the vaulting of major spans within buildings were implemented. This vaulting is considered to be the key development that enabled the emergence of the Gothic style, which followed the Romanesque, and which had profound implications for the form of European built heritage. Subsequently, European architectural style and technological development, of which Durham Cathedral represents a key stage, has spread across the globe as a key architectural influence, through colonialism and other forms of cultural exchange. The Norman Durham Cathedral can therefore be seen to be an architectural flowering with global significance and ramifications.
- 3.3.9 The scale of Durham Cathedral was unparalleled in Norman Britain and the massiveness of its construction was matched by its pioneering technical developments. Durham was the first major English church to be covered entirely with a stone vault and one of the earliest buildings in Europe to use ribbed vaulting throughout, an advance that offered profound aesthetic improvements. The structural use of the pointed transverse arch in the nave of the Cathedral represents one of the earliest appearances of this architectural innovation in Europe, and its use further improved the line of the high vault. The aesthetic sophistication achieved by these technical advances was to create a unified interior with strong directional movement eastwards towards the high altar and shrine. That movement was not rapid, the alternation of piers and the interlacing of the rib vaults slowed the eye's progress to create a complex and modulated rhythm down the body of the church. That quality was achieved first at Durham and once achieved, the foundations were laid for the gradual emergence of the Gothic style during the course of the 12th century.
- 3.3.10 Since its construction the Cathedral has undergone a series of changes, the majority of which have added to, rather than reduced, its significance. The Galilee chapel at the west end of the church is a major monument of the late Norman period and represents an important transition between the Romanesque and Gothic styles. The major addition of the 13th century, the innovative Chapel of the Nine Altars located at the east end of the church, did not radically disturb the essentially Romanesque building, nor did the rebuilding of the central tower in the 15th century.

The Neville Screen is *"perhaps the finest piece of church furnishing of the age and one of the most remarkable pieces of stone church tabernacle work in the country"*. (Geoffrey Webb).

- 3.3.11 The events of the 16th century Dissolution have resulted in the Cathedral retaining only a handful of significant pre-Dissolution furnishings and architectural fittings, of which the late 12th century Sanctuary Klocker (conserved in the Cathedral Treasury) is the most well known. The Neville Screen deserves to be noted as one of the most aesthetically perfect examples of the emerging Perpendicular style by nationally renowned Court craftsmen of the highest quality. The Bishop's Throne built by Bishop Hatfield (Bishop from 1345-1381) is probably the highest Episcopal throne in existence. Of the post-Dissolution work in the Cathedral, the Restoration woodwork of Bishop John Cosin is probably the most important element. The craftsmanship that bears his name, principally the font canopy and choir stalls, represents one of the most important components in the national collection of his work.

The Cosin woodwork is *"one of the most remarkable contributions of the county to the history of architecture and decoration in England."* (Nikolaus Pevsner).

- 3.3.12 From the 18th century onwards, the Cathedral underwent several phases of restoration works. This includes important work by national figures, and most notably includes the reintroduced Choir Screen and marble pavement by the famous church and cathedral architect Sir Giles Gilbert Scott, who was also responsible for designing and constructing such Victorian icons as the Albert Memorial in London.

The Monastery: Cloister, Deanery and College Architecture, Religion, Residence and Learning

- 3.3.13 On the south side of the Norman Cathedral church were the other principal buildings of the Benedictine Priory, one of the most important and richest monasteries in the country. The Priory was housed in a series of buildings attached to the Cathedral, including the Chapter House, Great Kitchen and Monks Dormitory around the cloister walks, many in continuous occupation since the foundation of the Priory in the late 11th century. Beyond these principal ranges stand the Deanery, formerly the Prior's Lodgings, and the monastic outer court buildings, now The College. Most of these structures are of outstanding national importance.

- 3.3.14 The Deanery and the College remain in residential use by the clerical members of the Cathedral Chapter and some employees, continuing a 1000-years of continual ecclesiastical residence at the Site. Along with the students of University College at the Castle, this residential use continues a tradition of community living introduced to the Site by the Community of St Cuthbert, and is therefore an intangible value closely associated with St Cuthbert. This continuing tradition of community residence within the WHS is therefore a component of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site.
- 3.3.15 The College is also home to the Choristers' School, the foundation of which between 1390 and 1416 formalised an already venerable tradition of learning and monastic education at the WHS. The modern school provides a popular education resource, and continues this 600-year tradition of formal education associated with the Cathedral. The internationally important University of Durham also continues this historic tradition of formal learning at the Site.
- 3.3.16 The east and south ranges of the Cloister (claustral ranges) retain early Norman work beneath later remodelling. In particular the truncated and restored Norman Chapter House in the east range is a nationally important survival. The south range of the Priory was almost wholly occupied by the Refectory, now Dean Sudbury's Library. No longer a building of stylistic purity, this is a multi-layered palimpsest incorporating work from the 11th to 19th centuries; a perfect reflection of the monastery's changing history and one of its most rewarding buildings. Dean Sudbury's Library contains an important lapidarium (dressed stone store) as well as its library collection.
- 3.3.17 The great west range shows a sequence of three dormitory remodellings, culminating in the vast building of 1398-1404 with its magnificent roof, which is perhaps the finest monastic dormitory in the country. The adjacent 14th century Great Kitchen is also, with Glastonbury, the supreme national exemplar. The Deanery enshrines the monastic Prior's house and exemplifies not only continuous occupation by the principal 'custodian' of the church for over 900 years, but displays the architectural development that goes with it, based on nationally important medieval ranges.
- 3.3.18 The outer court of the monastery, called The College, is another medieval survival of great importance. Following the Dissolution of the Benedictine Priory, this area became used as the homes (prebendal houses) of the Cathedral's new ruling Chapter, which was itself created after the Dissolution. Though the College currently appears to consist of largely Georgian buildings, these structures are simply new frontages for older buildings; beneath this 18th century veneer is substantial fabric of medieval date. Of the surviving medieval buildings in the College, the monastic Guest Hall and Infirmary are nationally important, as are the lesser service buildings at the College such as the barns and brewhouse. The relative significance of these and other medieval structures within the College cannot yet be accurately assessed without further contextual study. The post-Dissolution remodelling of the prebendal houses,

which was documented in extensive contemporary archives, is also nationally important, but its relative importance awaits further research.

- 3.3.19 The immediate landscape of the monastery is largely contained within the castle walls and the medieval precinct walls and comprises the former communal gardens, graveyards, work and open spaces of the medieval Priory, many remodelled, sometimes with some grandeur (e.g. Chorister's School), into the prebendal canon's gardens. Their improvement by such influential landscape designers as Joseph Spence (a Durham prebend and College resident in the mid-18th century), who may have introduced the 'Palladian rails' in the College, highlights the national importance of this layered landscape. The continuity of use and close relationship with the College buildings strongly suggests a rich and important landscape history that has yet to be researched, defined and asserted.

The Castle – Architecture, Norman Power and Palace Life

- 3.3.20 Durham Castle is a building of outstanding national importance. Its historical and architectural relationship with the Cathedral, linked by their spectacular peninsular site and the formal set piece of Palace Green, elevates the building to international significance as a symbol of Norman power and permanence. Whilst the sheer extent and importance of the medieval fabric has often been overshadowed by its loftier neighbour, as Pevsner remarks Durham Castle *"is one of the most impressive and best preserved [Norman castles] in the whole country"*. In terms of castle typology it is also a good regional example of early motte and bailey development, possibly established on the site of an earlier, Anglo-Saxon fortification.
- 3.3.21 The building's greatest importance lies in its status not only as a border castle but also as the palace of the early Norman Bishops, for whom the Cathedral was their church. The castle-palace buildings represent the quality and scale of buildings undertaken by the Norman kings across Britain, which have now all but disappeared. The west and north ranges in particular are of outstanding national importance and illustrate the scale and development of the quasi-regal medieval hall from its early 11th century beginnings in Durham through to its zenith in the 14th century. The Norman Chapel in the North range is also of outstanding national importance, and is probably the oldest standing building in the city. The 11th century capitals in this chapel are said to mark a significant step in the development of Romanesque sculpture in this country.
- 3.3.22 The Castle is in the unusual position of being occupied for well over 900 years: the kitchens have operated almost continuously for over 500 of them. Post-medieval additions are therefore important, as they directly relate to this continuity of use. Notable later developments include the 17th century restoration of the Castle, which involved the insertion of the famous Black Stairs by Bishop Cosin in the

early 1660s – a regionally important feature, which was highly influential in its time, spawning several lesser imitations. Further alterations and additions in the 18th century by Sanderson Miller and Wyatt in the Gothick manner, and Salvin's work on the Castle Keep in the mid 19th century are important works by these nationally acclaimed architects.

- 3.3.23 The landscape of the Castle grounds comprises a series of regionally important 17th century gardens created out of the military earthworks of a medieval border castle. The landscape modifications made to the Norman motte, the former moat (now the Fellows' and Master's Gardens), the North Terrace and Bishop's Walk display an ingenuity of design and also symbolise the transition of the Castle from a border fortress to a quieter existence within the new United Kingdom's middle shires. Their history and contribution to the wider riverbanks landscape is considered to raise them to national significance. English Heritage is currently considering the gardens for inclusion on the Register of Historic Parks and Gardens.

Palace Green - Medieval Town Planning and Landscape Architecture

- 3.3.24 The establishment of Palace Green in the early 12th century and its enclosure with the great offices of the palatinate is a major piece of medieval 'town planning', of national importance. Its visual function as a piece of landscape design, in uniting the great Bishop's church to his castle-palace, is of huge significance to the successful grouping of the WHS monuments. Less well understood is its symbolic dual significance in the formal Bishop's procession to his church and as a set piece for the display of secular palatinate power, exemplified by the Court, Mint, Prison and Exchequer buildings that defined the open space. Of these medieval buildings only the Exchequer still survives as a rare example of its type, but the group now includes the later buildings of the Bishops and the new university, ranging from the 17th to 19th century, all of which are of national importance, with Bishop Cosin 's Library surviving as a 17th century building of particular note.
- 3.3.25 The landscape of the Palace Green area is predominantly the space itself, a planned public area of significantly early date, where grass was a relatively late arrival. There were also earlier service yards and buildings to the west that require further research.

South Bailey and Prebends Bridge - Romantic Beauty

- 3.3.26 The WHS boundary, in its extension towards Prebends Bridge, encompasses listed buildings on the Bailey of local interest. The small church of St Mary-the-Less is locally important and contains ex-situ medieval sculpture and Cosin woodwork of regional significance. The archaeology of the Bailey is also important, with the street having been established since the late 11th century, at least.

- 3.3.27 The classical Watergate precludes the fine late 18th century Prebends Bridge. The latter is a major addition to the designed and remodelled topography of the Durham Riverbanks; a historic landscape gaining an increasing regional and perhaps national significance as research deepens our understanding and enriches the importance of what survives.
- 3.3.28 Prebends Bridge is included within the WHS boundary as a means to identify the importance of the peninsula panorama as a visual and symbolic aspect of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS. Above the Arcadian Old Fulling Mill, shrouded in woodland and washed by the River Wear, stands the Castle and Cathedral, the iconic buildings symbolising the secular and spiritual power of the Prince Bishops, with the whole composition closed by the distant Framwellgate Bridge. This is a designed landscape of sublime significance - a balanced composition with the Norman buildings at its centre, achieved by the 18th century siting of the bridge and judicious tree planting. It creates the iconic image of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS, and is currently being considered by English Heritage for inclusion in the Register of Historic Parks and Gardens.
- 3.3.29 The view of the Durham peninsula from Prebends Bridge has become a symbol for Durham as well as being one of the most famous views of England. It has had many layers of meaning throughout its long history and still carries many different associations today. Since the construction of Prebends Bridge, the view has inspired artists, including such notaries as JMW Turner, as well as authors, including Sir Walter Scott (indeed, the insertion of a plaque into the bridge containing the well-known lines from 'Harold the Dauntless' referring to the "*grey towers of Durham*" has apparently encouraged the spot to become known as 'Scott's View'). Pevsner considered this prospect "*the most moving one*" from which to view "*one of the great experiences of Europe*", whilst the 19th century American novelist Nathaniel Hawthorne wrote in his *English Notebooks* of his visit to the Bridge:

"I paused upon the bridge, and admired and wondered at the beauty and glory of this scene ... it was so grand, venerable and sweet, all at once; I never saw so lovely and magnificent a scene, nor (being content with this) do I care to see a better." (Nathaniel Hawthorne).

Archaeology

- 3.3.30 As with the collections, the archaeology of the WHS is a direct result of the continued activity at the Site over the past 1000-years, and longer, and is a key component of the Site's authenticity and

integrity. For this reason the nationally important deposits outlined below are elevated to international significance, as part of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.

- 3.3.31 The archaeological resource that lies beneath the Cathedral and its adjacent monastery represents nationally important material, which may well include evidence of the former Anglo Saxon churches of the Community of St Cuthbert. Buried remains also survive of the Norman east end, and the now demolished medieval additions to the Cathedral. A churchyard to the north also accompanied the Cathedral church, which has since been partially built over to the east; this is an important component in the history and the setting of the building and may survive as archaeological deposits.
- 3.3.32 The archaeology of the Cathedral College's monastic enclosure is hugely important and of national significance, bearing as it does on the establishment of the Anglo-Saxon monastery and the earliest history of the city itself, as well as the development of the buildings of the Norman monastery and its surrounding cemetery.
- 3.3.33 The archaeology of the Castle, with the continuous occupation of the site probably going back to 995 AD, if not earlier, is of major importance. It is likely that the very first defensive works to prepare the peninsula for the body of St Cuthbert in the late 10th century were carried out beneath the present Castle.
- 3.3.34 The early archaeology of the central space of Palace Green may have been much reduced by the 12th century remodelling, which may have scraped away earlier evidence in order to achieve a flat site. Nevertheless, the site marks the probable position of the earliest Anglo-Saxon settlement beside the early monastery and is a historically significant site where the precise extent and importance of the archaeological deposits has never been systematically examined. The subsequent peripheral medieval buildings and rebuilding will probably have left important deposits of national importance below ground.

Christian Centre

- 3.3.35 Durham has been an important centre of Christianity in England for over a millennium. Through this long Christian experience the Site conserves internationally significant spiritual and religious themes, relevant to the international Christian community, and to many other religions. These include themes of cult and sainthood; spirituality and sacredness; conflict and reconciliation; pilgrimage and sanctuary. The Cathedral is an important centre for the conservation of such widely important and endangered skills as English Church Music. The unbroken use of the Site for Christian worship over the past 1000 years and the Christian cultural and religious themes listed above are all closely associated with the

relics of St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, and are therefore key components of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.

- 3.3.36 Initially the importance of the peninsula as a Christian centre developed after the relics of St Cuthbert were carried there in 995 AD, causing the new defended religious site to become a national, and possibly international, focus for pilgrimage. Since this date, the Cathedral church and City of Durham have grown and developed, largely because of the trade and fame brought by the pilgrims; even today, the Cathedral is a centre for religious pilgrimage whilst also being an attractor for international tourists. The philosophy of the Benedictine Monastery still holds resonance, and the Cathedral welcomes visitors regardless of their reason for coming to the Cathedral. Its primary purpose remains as a focus for Christian worship and witness and it can easily justify its unofficial title as the spiritual capital of the North East of England.

Educational Centre and Centre of Intellectual Learning

- 3.3.37 The Durham peninsula has been associated with learning and education for much of its history. Anglo-Saxon monasteries were the main source of education for the local community and for their residents, and were the major vehicle for the dissemination of knowledge within early medieval Europe. At Durham, as elsewhere, the monastery was a focus for learning and skills such as manuscript production; the Chapter Library at Durham was established during this period. The founding of the nationally renowned Choristers' School between 1390-1416 formalised this educational tradition, which has continued with the establishment of the internationally highly regarded University of Durham in Durham Castle in 1832. The educational use of many of Palace Green's flanking buildings has followed the growth of the University.
- 3.3.38 The Cathedral Chapter continues to welcome groups and individuals who wish to learn more both of the history of the buildings and of the Christian faith. Nearly 17,000 schoolchildren from schools across the locality, the region and the country, come to the Cathedral each year to develop their understanding of history and religious studies.

3.4 Assessment of Related Values

- 3.4.1 In addition to the Site's Outstanding Universal Values explored in the proposed Statement of Outstanding Universal Value, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS also holds a number of important related values. Whilst these values are not components of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value, it is important that the Management Plan takes them into consideration, and seeks to conserve these wider values wherever possible.

Collections

- 3.4.2 The World Heritage Committee does not consider portable objects to be part of a Site's Outstanding Universal Value. However, the collections housed at the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS are a highly important feature of the Site, adding to its richness, complexity and intellectual wealth. For these reasons, as well as for their intrinsic historical and aesthetic value, the collections are an important aspect of the Site's related values. Some of these collections are of international significance.
- 3.4.3 The WHS contains a variety of collections of books and artefacts associated with the Site's history and development and with key figures involved with that history. In addition, the entire Christian complex and its picturesque setting has long been the focus for expressions of artistic creativity that range from religious-inspired sculpture to landscape paintings of the peninsula. These collections are a component part of the Site's authenticity and integrity and together comprise a key aspect of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value.
- 3.4.4 The Cathedral has accumulated an impressive collection of portable artefacts, reflecting their patronage over the centuries; their religious power and the continual practice of Christianity at the Site. The furnishings, fine art, treasury, collections and archives of the Cathedral and College buildings represent a component of the cultural heritage of the nation equal to, if not surpassing in importance, that of the buildings themselves. The dormitory displays a regional collection of Anglo-Saxon sculpture of national importance, given the influence and artistic excellence of the Anglo-Saxon Church in Northumbria. The Cathedral Treasury contains Anglo-Saxon, medieval and later artefacts, books, jewellery, vestments and plate of outstanding national importance, including the coffin of St Cuthbert with his vestments, cross, chalice and paten. The embroidery associated with St Cuthbert is amongst the oldest surviving embroidery in Europe.
- 3.4.5 The Dean and Chapter Library and University of Durham Library at No. 5, The College, hold exceptional collections of both monastic archives and post-Dissolution Dean and Chapter records, as well as the core of the medieval monastic library enriched in later centuries. The medieval Priory account rolls, for example, represent a national treasure alongside important survivals from other Benedictine monasteries such as Westminster and Canterbury. The recently acquired Meissen Library in the Deanery represents an archive of European significance. Finally the furnishings and fittings within the College houses, accumulated over the centuries, represent an important if undefined asset that contributes to the cultural value of the Site.

- 3.4.6 The furnishings, fittings, art collection and other contents of the Castle are a fitting complement to the historic buildings in which they rest. The collection has been developed during the long lifetime of the Castle, and relates to its use as a defended castle, a palace and a university. The Castle is a registered museum and houses a collection that includes furniture, fine art (including portraits of the Bishops and local landscapes) and militaria.
- 3.4.7 Within Palace Green, Bishop Cosin's late 17th century Library is of particular note. This library is not only of architectural importance but is also significant for its key influence in the development of library design, due to its innovative French layout. It contains a nationally important collection of books and manuscripts, and of the French books the Library contains, several are currently absent from the French national Library, the Bibliotheque Nationale. Indeed, the archives and collections within all the library buildings on the west side of Palace Green are of considerable national importance - Bishop Cosin's Library and the Exchequer (Special Collections), and Palace Green Library (Special and Local Collections).

Community Focus

- 3.4.8 The WHS is a central gathering point for the entire community. The WHS acts as a community resource for the holding of events, such as the Miners' Gala, and family gatherings such as weddings, as well as containing the community's principal place of Christian worship. It enjoys a special place within the heart of the community of the City of Durham, a sentiment that is passionately expressed by most members of this community. As the home of a University of international importance, the WHS also stands at the heart of the worldwide Diaspora of University of Durham alumni. Ex-students of the University hold the WHS in high regard, and many consider it to be a poignant symbol of their university days.

Skills and Trades

- 3.4.9 The active conservation of the structures contained within the WHS requires the skills of a variety of specialist craftspeople, including masons, joiners and stained glass restorers. As these are skills that are not currently in general demand within the UK economy, the active conservation of the WHS represents a living cultural heritage of internationally significant endangered skills. These skills are not only important for the conservation of the built heritage, but are also significant in their own right, allowing understanding of the intricate skills and knowledge of our ancestors, and enabling insight into their lives.

Economic Role

- 3.4.9 The WHS is an important regional economic driver, attracting visitors from outside the region to Durham, and supporting the economic regeneration of the City, the county and the northeast as a whole. The presence of the WHS acts as a stamp of quality for the City and makes an invaluable contribution to the image of Durham as a visitor and retail destination. Though many shoppers may not yet visit the WHS during their stay in the City, the visual presence of the Cathedral and Castle on the peninsula creates a unique backdrop for their activities, increasing Durham's offer for the visitor. The institutions within the WHS, and the University in particular, are major employers within the local and regional economy, and a large number of people experience the WHS as their regular place of work.



4.0 MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES

4.0 KEY MANAGEMENT ISSUES AND OBJECTIVES

4.1 Introduction

Structure of the Section

4.1.1 This section provides the broad direction for the future of the WHS through the provision of an agreed Vision; it describes the Key Principles for managing the WHS, and through a discussion of the key issues facing the Site it proposes objectives for the Site's management.

4.1.2 The Vision is designed to sustain the WH Site's Outstanding Universal Value and related significances for the benefit of future generations, whilst maintaining its authenticity of function. It is supported by six Key Principles, which provide clear guidelines for action at the WHS. The Vision and Principles are complemented by a series of management objectives that seek to deliver a sustainable future for the WHS. The Management Plan's objectives are intended to be reviewed every 6 years; the Vision and Key Principles are intended to provide a longer term framework for the Site.

4.1.3 The management objectives have been developed based on a clear understanding of the issues facing the Site. They are presented in the following section along with an analysis of the issues they are intended to address. The Objectives are supported by a number of Actions, which are presented in full in the Action Plan contained in Section 5.0. As can be seen in Section 5.0, the Action Plan is prioritised according to short, medium and long-term actions. As the short-term actions are due to be completed within the lifetime of this Management Plan, and the ongoing actions will remain of relevance through the lifetime of this Plan, both of these types of action are reproduced in Section 5 beneath their relevant objectives as shaded boxes titled "Short-term and Ongoing Actions". This is intended to raise the profile of the actions that require particular attention over the next six years, and which therefore need to be prioritised.

4.1.4 The issues, objectives and actions are organised under 5 themes:

- Managing the WHS (Section 4.3);
- Conserving the Site and its Significances (Section 4.4);
- Using the Site (Section 4.5);
- Understanding the Site (Section 4.6); and
- Enhancing Access and Sustainable Transport (Section 4.7).

Overview of Opportunities and Threats

- 4.1.5 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS, with its built heritage, historic associations, collections and intangible values, is currently well managed by its site owners, who are aided by a number of specialist advisory bodies (see Section 2.0). The three site owners have extensive experience of managing the WHS, with a management history that extends back to the foundations of their respective institutions; in the case of the Cathedral, this constitutes over 1000 years of experience. A key output of the WHS Management Plan is the provision of consensus-led Management structures that enable the co-ordination of activity within the WHS, and the formal sharing of experience between these institutional managers and advisors (see Section 4.3).
- 4.1.6 As outlined throughout the WHS Management Plan (see in particular Sections 2.0 and 3.0 and 4.6), the history and development of the Site is well documented, well researched and well understood, allowing for a clear position in the ongoing development of 'informed conservation' at the Site (see Section 4.3.51). The research resources located at the Site, including libraries and archives; specialist members of staff; the knowledge of advisory bodies and the skills of keen volunteers, means that key outstanding questions about the Site can be addressed, and that the understanding of the Site can be regularly updated with the development of new knowledge. However, some new procedures may be required to facilitate this process (see Section 4.6).
- 4.1.7 Against this background, a number of key opportunities present themselves at the Site. Foremost amongst these is the appropriate development of the Cathedral, Castle and Palace Green to better fulfil the changing needs of worshippers, students, local communities, visitors and other Site users (see Section 4.5). In addition, there is great potential for the Site to fulfil a much larger role within the City and the region as a driver both for sustainable tourism and for other forms of heritage-led regeneration. These wider opportunities range from becoming a more widely used regional icon, inspiring pride in the region and the achievements of its people, to potentially leading the development of a new, internationally-renowned tourist trail linking the northeast's unique Christian sites (see Section 4.5).
- 4.1.8 The Site owners currently rely heavily upon tourism income to perform their conservation tasks (see Section 4.3), and could potentially benefit from a coordinated approach to tourism at the Site (see Section 4.5 and Appendix 7) and within the City and the region, that maximises the revenue obtained from this market for all partners. The development of the Site's tourism potential is a key opportunity for the WHS. Other opportunities at the Site relate to improved information sharing amongst partners; enhanced educational facilities and messages and improved access both to and within the Site (see Sections 4.5, 4.6, 4.7).

- 4.1.9 There are two key inter-related threats at the Site: the cost of maintaining the unique built heritage of the Site, and the difficulty in gaining funding to implement these essential works (see Section 4.3). The Chapter and the University rely on the income provided by day visitors for financing these works, whilst the University and the independent college of St John's also require the ongoing development of their conference and bed and breakfast facilities, to ensure the sustainability of the institutions' finances. In the past the University has been discriminated against by some funding bodies, which have been reluctant to fund maintenance and conservation works at educational establishments.
- 4.1.10 It was against this background of difficulty in financing essential maintenance works to the Site's built heritage that the Castle was placed on the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' Register. This was due to the condition of some of its key roofs, and to a lesser extent, the state of its stonework. Funding has been acquired for the works required to remove the Castle from the 'Buildings at Risk' Register, and the works completed.
- 4.1.11 There are a number of other threats faced by the Site. These include fire; terrorism and major incident; landslide and geological fault; vandalism, theft and casual damage. Procedures are generally in place for monitoring and managing these threats, though more needs to be done to address the long-term risk of geological fault and landslide at the Site (see Section 4.3).

4.2 Vision and Key Principles

Vision

The World Heritage Site is, and will continue to be, a holy and tranquil place that is inspiring and life enhancing for all who come into contact with it. Separated from the rest of the City by the peaceful river gorge, the Durham peninsula will continue to be a welcoming and atmospheric space with a strong sense of its own identity, providing sanctuary from the pressures of everyday-life.

The globally significant cultural assets and setting of the World Heritage Site will be conserved sensitively, to ensure that they are handed down from generation to generation in the best possible condition. All works at, and in the vicinity of, the WHS will continue to be of the highest quality, with the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS as their core aim.

The World Heritage Site is the iconic, beautiful and historic heart of the City, the Diocese and the University, and it will continue to be made accessible for all. The continued relevance of

the World Heritage Site and all it contains will be ensured through the ongoing high level of community use of the WHS, whilst the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS will be celebrated and promoted through accessible and informative educational programmes.

As the social, religious, educational and geographical centre of a number of communities, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS will seek to use its globally significant status as a tool to benefit all who either live nearby or who use the Site. Appropriate opportunities to benefit the communities that surround the peninsula, socially, spiritually, educationally or economically through their association with the WHS will actively be sought and pursued. The traditional core purposes of the Site will be maintained as an essential part of the WH Site's Outstanding Universal Value and related significances.

Key Principles

4.2.1 The management of a WHS is aided by the establishment of Key Principles. The six Key Principles for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS are designed to be long-lasting, and to remain relevant during all future revisions of the Management Plan. All actions at the WHS need to be tested against these Principles to ensure that they are in keeping with the spirit of the Management Plan, and that they hold the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS at their core.

- The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS will be managed by consensus, achieved through an active partnership between all of the Site managers, owners and relevant statutory agencies.
- The Management Plan's Vision, Key Principles and objectives will provide an overarching framework for all plans, policies and decisions relating to the Site.
- All decisions and actions at the Site will have at their core the need for the high quality and informed conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS.
- The management of the WHS will aim towards an increase in the WH Site's accessibility, including the reasonable and practicable removal of physical, sensory, intellectual, social, cultural and organisational barriers to access.
- The management of the WHS will promote and increase knowledge and understanding of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its significances for all.
- All decisions and actions at the Site will be based on the principles of sensitivity and appropriate sustainability, as defined by the Budapest Declaration on World Heritage.

The Budapest Declaration on World Heritage

4.2.2 The position of the World Heritage Committee on sustainability is laid out in the 2002 Budapest Declaration on World Heritage (World Heritage Committee 2002). This Declaration recognises that historic towns and urban areas must evolve and adapt to modern pressures if they are to be economically and socially sustainable. According to the Declaration, this change needs to be achieved through "*an appropriate and equitable balance between conservation, sustainability and development*".

4.2.3 The Budapest Declaration on World Heritage states that:

"3. *In view of the increasing challenges to our shared heritage, we will ... :*

c. Seek to ensure an appropriate and equitable balance between conservation, sustainability and development, so that World Heritage properties can be protected through appropriate activities contributing to the social and economic development and quality of life of our communities;

d. Join to co-operate in the protection of heritage, recognising that to harm such heritage is to harm, at the same time, the human spirit and the world's inheritance;

e. Promote World Heritage through communication, education, research, training and public awareness strategies;

f. Seek to ensure the active involvement of our local communities at all levels in the identification, protection and management of our World Heritage properties"

4.2.4 The sustainability of the Cathedral, the Castle and St John's College all depend to a large degree upon the ongoing financial benefits brought by visitors, the bed and breakfast (B&B) trade and by conferences and other commercial activities. These financial rewards are essential for the ongoing maintenance of the built heritage and other significances of the WHS. It is therefore important that the appropriate economic sustainability of the WHS is supported by the Vision and Principles contained within this Management Plan.

4.3 Theme 1: Managing the World Heritage Site and its Setting

The WHS Coordinating Committee

- 4.3.1 The WHS is owned and managed by three bodies: the Cathedral Chapter, the University of Durham and St John's College. Each establishment has their own chain of management (outlined in Appendix 3), and they interact with each other as the need arises. In addition to these property-owning bodies, a number of other organisations have interests in the management of the Site: The City of Durham Council, Durham County Council, One NorthEast, English Heritage, DCMS and ICOMOS-UK. The roles of these bodies are defined in Section 2.5. All these owners and advisors are members of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group.
- 4.3.2 The WHS Management Plan Steering Group was brought into existence to deliver the first Management Plan for the Site. Its members are listed in Appendix 1. The WHS Management Plan Steering Group currently exists solely to manage the production of the WHS Management Plan for Durham; it does not have a formal remit to coordinate the management of the WHS as an entity. There is currently no managing body that brings together the key managerial interests in the Site, to coordinate activity and action, and to oversee the implementation of the WHS Management Plan.
- 4.3.3 A key objective of the Management Plan is that a WHS Coordinating Committee is created to act as a forum for the discussion of issues concerning the management of the Site, and as a coordinating body for the implementation of the Management Plan. A local model for the coordinated management of an area in multiple ownerships exists for the Durham peninsula, in the form of the Durham Riverbanks Management Group, which includes several members of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group (see Section 2.9.7).
- 4.3.4 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Coordinating Committee would be composed principally of those bodies that have contributed to the creation of the WHS Management Plan, through the forum of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group. This Committee would be based on the principles of partnership and would need to meet at least once a year. It would undertake the following roles:
- To monitor the condition of the Site and discuss appropriate action to deal with any threats to its well-being;
 - To develop and agree such further principles and guidance as might be needed for the protection of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the Site;
 - To monitor the implementation of the general and specific recommendations of the WHS Management Plan;

- To discuss management issues and to promote coordinated management and joint management actions within the Site as necessary;
- To search for and implement opportunities for skills, knowledge and resource sharing across the Site, such as joint educational, promotional and conservation activities;
- To review the conclusions and recommendations of the WHS Management Plan and to update the Plan regularly, and as necessary;
- To incorporate new developments in understanding about the WHS within the Site's management;
- To monitor statutory development plans and Government guidance and encourage the appropriate authorities to keep under review the statutory and other designations relating to the WHS and its setting, in order to ensure the continued protection of the Site and its setting;
- To support WHS Periodic Reporting for the Site.

4.3.5 The Committee would benefit from a revolving chair and may be considerably aided by the appointment of a WHS Officer. There are now WHS Officers in post at most UK WH Sites, who are funded from a variety of sources. One of the first actions of the WHS Coordinating Committee needs to be the consideration of the appointment of a WHS Officer, or another means of providing for this important coordinating function. This WHS Officer or other nominated co-ordinator would:

- Take on the day-to-day coordinating role at the WHS and act as the central point of contact for the WHS;
- Facilitate the implementation of projects at the WHS;
- Maintain links and share skills, knowledge and information with other WH Sites and related sites in the UK;
- Complete funding applications (see Section 4.3.47);
- Undertake the necessary monitoring and review of the Management Plan (see Section 5.3).

Objective 1: Establish a WHS Coordinating Committee.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Formally establish the WHS Coordinating Committee;
- Endorse the WHS Management Plan as the overarching document to guide the actions of the WHS Coordinating Committee;
- Consider the appointment/nomination of a WHS Officer for the Site.

Site Boundary

- 4.3.6 The original boundary of the WHS (see Figure 2.1) has been widely criticised since the Site's inscription in 1986 as being drawn too tightly around the main buildings of the Site and for failing to encompass all elements of the Site that contribute to its Outstanding Universal Value (see Sections 2.2, 3.0 and Appendix 4). This was a key issue for the Site in the 1995 ICOMOS-UK monitoring review of English WH Sites.
- 4.3.7 In response to this situation, the WHS Management Plan Steering Group has re-evaluated the WHS boundary during the preparation of this Management Plan. Chris Blandford Associates undertook an independent review of the Site boundary and options for its enlargement in order to inform the Steering Group's decision. The "*Review of Site Boundary and Setting Discussion Paper*" (CBA 2003) was submitted to the Steering Group in November 2003. This paper concluded that the Outstanding Universal Value (OUV) of the Site is not encapsulated within the current WHS boundary. Based on this paper and on discussions with their representative bodies, the WHS Management Plan Steering Group members recommend to DCMS that the State Party should approach the World Heritage Committee to seek expansion of the WHS to include Palace Green. At the same time, the State party should be invited to submit the proposed Statement of Significance for the Committee's approval.
- 4.3.8 The CBA discussion paper also concluded that consideration should be given to a further enlargement of the Site as part of the formal review of the Management Plan in 2010, subject to:
- English Heritage and the University of Durham agreeing a schedule of the works that must be undertaken and completed before the Castle is removed from the 'Buildings at Risk' Register; - completed
 - Funding for the works to the Castle being secured, and the works completed so as to allow the Castle to be removed from the 'Buildings at Risk' Register (see Section 4.4.17) (works have been undertaken and the castle is currently "active reconsideration" of its Buildings at Risk status); and
 - Funding for essential works to the peninsula riverbanks secured through the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan (see Appendix 8).

Objective 2: Recommend that DCMS invite the UNESCO World Heritage Committee to approve a revised Statement of Significance and the extension of the Site to include Palace Green and undertake a future review of the WHS boundary.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Recommend to DCMS that they propose to the World Heritage Committee that the inscribed WHS is expanded to include Palace Green and that a revised Statement of Significance be adopted;
- English Heritage and the University of Durham to agree the schedule of works required for removing the Castle from the Register of 'Buildings at Risk';
- Funding to be sought for the works to the Castle and the works to remove the Castle from the 'Buildings at Risk' Register to be implemented;
- Support the implementation of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan and the projects it contains (see Appendix 8 and Objective 3);
- Include a review of the Site boundary during the 2010 review of the WHS Management Plan.

Setting of the Site

4.3.9 At its simplest level, 'setting' refers to the environment or surroundings within which a thing is set. Whilst setting is usually regarded to be a fundamentally visual concept related to the visibility of a heritage feature and its physical surroundings, the general extent and nature of the setting of a heritage feature is not just a case of considering its extreme limit of visibility (i.e. the visual envelope). 'Setting' is closely bound with the concept of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site and incorporates issues connected with historic continuity and relationship, considering links between those heritage features outside the Site and those within the Site. 'Setting' also contains an important experiential aspect, and needs to consider the experience of accessing the site and the condition of key gateways.

4.3.10 As outlined in Section 2.4, the setting of the WHS has been divided into three key elements: the Immediate Environs, the Inner Bowl and the Outer Bowl. Each of these elements has a different interrelationship with the WHS, and hence different issues are associated with them; an overview of these is provided below.

Immediate Environs: The Medieval Town Core

4.3.11 The medieval city core is a living, working 21st century city, providing for the business, social and commercial needs of the City's residents and visitors. It is an important historic townscape and a key gateway to the WHS, with most visitors approaching the peninsula through the medieval town. The area therefore needs to accommodate a variety of needs, including the management and conservation of the high quality historic townscape, and the provision of appropriate high quality change to accommodate the modern-day needs of the people of Durham. Following a successful public

consultation asking for people's views on the issues affecting the City, 3,500 respondents, the Partnership has prepared a new Master plan to be finalised in late 2006. This Plan deals with the issues of land development, cultural development and using the many opportunities in the City including valuing the special historic environment surmounted by the WHS.

- 4.3.12 The importance of a well-connected and high quality public realm in the City centre is recognised by City of Durham Council, who see these as key to improving the visitor experience in the City. The policies contained in the Durham City Local Plan for the City Centre Conservation Area are also an important means of managing the myriad needs of this space (see Sections 2.8.25 and 2.8.31). It is important that future reviews of the City Centre Conservation Area and the policies attached to this area continue to take into account the sensitivities of the setting of the WHS.

Immediate Environs: The Bailey and Castle Walls

- 4.3.13 The Bailey provides a high quality setting for the WHS, and is part of the immediate environs of the WHS. The Bailey is an integral part of the medieval defensive complex of which the Castle and Cathedral are part, and conserves the medieval street plan of this area. The streetscape of the Bailey is generally of high quality, with the floorscape managed by DCC and the buildings and their facades largely managed by the colleges and independent colleges of Durham University. These features need to be retained and conserved. A key feature of this area is the Castle Wall, the remains of which encompass the top of the peninsula on all sides. This important medieval structure is in need of stabilisation and conservation.

Immediate Environs: River Gorge

- 4.3.14 The River Gorge is an important part of the immediate environs of the WHS, providing a wooded foreground to views to and from the WHS and contributing to the sense of peace and seclusion experienced at the WHS. Several approaches to the WHS pass through the river gorge, either along the riverbank paths, or across the two bridges that link the peninsula plateau with the surrounding city. The river gorge is a key gateway to the WHS.
- 4.3.15 The gorge encompasses the inner and outer riverbanks greenspace and the River Wear itself (see Figure 2.5). The river gorge is the subject of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan (DRMP) (see Section 2.9 and Appendix 8). The WHS Management Plan needs to work with and support the implementation of the DRMP.

Immediate Environs: The Outer Riverbanks Townscape

- 4.3.16 The outer riverbanks townscape is highly visible in views out from the WHS, and provides key glimpsed views to the WHS. It is part of the immediate environs of the WHS. The main issue in this area is the appropriateness of some of the 20th century architecture as a setting to the WHS, due to their scale, bulk or design, though other examples of the period, such as Kingsgate Bridge and Dunelm House are highly successful. In the long term, opportunities for replacement of inappropriately designed buildings should to be sought. In addition, it is important that the glimpsed views between buildings are maintained.

The Inner Bowl

- 4.3.17 The Inner Bowl provides the next element of the Site's setting, beyond the immediate environs. The edges of this topographic feature provide the archetypal mid-distance views of the WHS, such as from Whinney Hill and Observatory Hill. The edges of the Inner Bowl are described in Section 2.4.57-2.4.59, and ongoing analysis should provide a mapped extent for this element of the setting.
- 4.3.18 The key issue for this element of the setting is the maintenance and enhancement of its visual landscape and townscape character. This includes ensuring that new development is sensitive to the setting of the WHS in its scale, design and massing, and the retention of the green spaces, woodland areas and significant individual trees that form essential parts of the views to and from the Site.

The Outer Bowl

- 4.3.19 The Outer Bowl is a second topographic feature that provides long distance views of the WHS. It is defined as the distinctive horizon for views from the top of the Cathedral tower. In terms of impact on the setting of the Site, much of this area is less sensitive to change, with the detail of these long-distance views being less visible from the WHS. Key issues for this area include the need to conserve the open green spaces visible both from the central tower and looking back to it, and also the need to prevent development in the surrounding area from breaking the skyline along the edge of this Outer Bowl. It is important that new development does not detract from the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS. Ongoing analysis should provide a mapped extent for this element of the setting.

Historical and Archaeological Significance

- 4.3.20 In addition to the visual and experiential factors of setting considered above, the historic links between the WHS and its surrounding historic landscape also require management and conservation. Whilst the key features of this historic landscape have already been mapped (see Figure 2.4), the historic landscape setting of the WHS would benefit from further research to enable its better understanding and management. This research needs to consider historical, archaeological and landscape components of this less-visual aspect of the setting of the Site. Stronger intellectual links also need to be promoted linking the peninsula with its historical landscape through interpretation, features, guided tours and other events.
- 4.3.21 The historic setting of the WHS extends across the immediate environs, the Inner and Outer Bowl and connects with regional and national landscape themes (such as the national organisation of power in the medieval period).

Planning Policy

- 4.3.22 The setting of the WHS is protected through extensive national, regional and local planning policy (see Section 2.8). For example, in their justification for policy E3, which protects the setting of the WHS, the City of Durham Local Plan specifically mentions the inner and outer bowls as part of the setting of the Site, and outlines the sensitivity of the WHS to development within these areas (Local Plan paragraphs 3.27-3.30). The national, regional and local planning framework is considered adequate for the protection of the setting of the Site, particularly when implemented in the context of the preceding discussion about the issues related to the different elements of the setting of the WHS at Durham. It is important that future revision of the national, regional and local planning policy continue to provide such a high level of protection for all factors that contribute to the setting of the WHS.

Objective 3: Conserve the setting of the WHS and encourage appropriate and sensitive development to support the ongoing regeneration of Durham and its environs.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Implement the Riverbanks Management Plan and its Programme of Projects (see Appendix 8 and Objective 2);
- Ensure that future reviews of national, regional, county and local plan policies connected with the protection of the WHS and its setting are in line with WHS Management Plan objectives;
- Ensure that the sensitivity of the setting of the WHS is taken into account during future reviews or the City Centre Conservation Area and of the policies that relate to it;
- Map the geographical extents of the Inner Bowl and Outer Bowl.

Risk Management

- 4.3.23 Forward planning and risk preparedness are important aspects of a WHS Management Plan, which needs to consider how arrangements at all levels combine to ensure the safety of the Site in relation to the following threats.

Fire

- 4.3.24 Fire planning at the WHS is of a high standard. National legislation for fire precaution, Regulatory Reform (Fire Safety) Order 2005, applies to the University and the Cathedral but does not apply to the residential houses within the Cathedral College, as these are classed as private domestic dwellings. The County Durham and Darlington Fire and Rescue Service (CDDFRS) acts as enforcer of the Fire Precaution Act for the University, ensuring that their fire certificate is up-to-date, and as an advisor for the Cathedral Chapter, to help them with the management of fire risk.
- 4.3.25 Fire response is organised at a county level: the CDDFRS provide fire and emergency rescue services in Durham. The fire station in Durham is a full time station and takes particular account of the special needs of the Cathedral and University in the planning of their service. The Site has the additional protection of large water tanks, which are kept replenished and which are located beneath Palace Green; these are to be used for tackling fire within the WHS. The Fire Service practises at the Cathedral at least once a year.
- 4.3.26 Both the Cathedral and the University have fire planning procedures in place. The Cathedral has a Fire Safety Committee and all guides and stewards are trained in fire management. CDDFRS inspects the building as an advisor about three times a year. The CDDFRS is informed as to the relative importance of the Cathedral's contents and fabric, and has a procedure for controlling any outbreak by area and for removing artefacts accordingly. The University have a "*Disaster Recovery Plan*" for their estate agreed in advance with the CDDFRS, and in addition the University Library have their own individual plan agreed with the CDDFRS.
- 4.3.27 The Castle and the buildings on Palace Green are part of the jurisdiction of the University Health and Safety Office, who have strict procedures and guidance in place for fire, and who undertake regular fire training and evacuation drills. These buildings are carefully monitored by the CDDFRS.

Terrorism and Major Incident

- 4.3.28 As with fire, the CDDFRS have responsibility for dealing with the aftermath of a terrorist or other major incident. Within the CDDFRS there is a specialist Emergency Planning Unit, which is a specialist planning and response unit for major incident. They have in place about 44 Emergency Plans for the County, of which the Generic Emergency Plans and the Consequence-Specific Emergency Plans relate directly to the WHS.
- 4.3.29 The Cathedral has in place a policy of general alertness for the identification of terrorist risk, and, as with fire, would use their rescue policy and the goodwill of local people to rectify the situation. It is felt that too many security arrangements to guard against terrorism would negatively impact upon the Cathedral's standard of welcome and policy of freedom of access. For the Castle and Palace Green, the University Health and Safety Office again has responsibility for creating risk assessments and implementing guidance and training for these risks.

Landslide and Geological Fault

- 4.3.30 The issue of landslide and geological fault needs to be addressed at a WHS-wide level. It is important that long-term monitoring is set in place to assess these risks and develop remedial strategies as necessary. More in-depth research is required into the geology of the entire WHS; the risks that it presents and how they can be managed. This research needs to be ongoing and regularly updated.
- 4.3.31 Land movement is an issue for the Cathedral and the Castle, largely due to their locations close to the steep peninsula sides. Sleepers (markers on the building to monitor movement) have been put in place in key locations in the Cathedral and the Castle, such as the Cathedral's Galilee Chapel, to assess movement in the buildings' structure. Some sleepers have been in place at the Castle for several decades, however, it does not appear that records have been kept of their movement, and some of these have been painted over. More recent sleepers at the Castle are monitored, maintained and recorded, and this system needs to continue. The Castle was subject to extensive works in the 1920s to underpin it, and the ongoing effectiveness of these works needs to be kept under monitoring and review. The monitoring of movement through the provision of appropriately located sleepers needs to continue across the WHS.

Vandalism, Theft and Casual Damage

4.3.32 Vandalism, theft and casual damage are important aspects of risk management at the Site. Both the Cathedral and the University have portable artefacts, and both have security measures in place to address this risk. In the case of the Castle's art collection, all paintings are catalogued and numbered, whilst the Cathedral keeps their valuable objects in the "Treasures" exhibition under careful surveillance and security. Past experience of theft at the University Library has caused their security procedures to be refined and heightened.

4.3.33 Vandalism and casual damage are issues for both the Chapter and the University. As the buildings managed by these institutions are in continual use by a large number of people, this risk is difficult to manage, with education and surveillance the most appropriate strategies.

Conclusion

4.3.34 Risk management is a key issue for the WHS, and it is important that the relevant organisations continue to both monitor the risks and review their risk monitoring procedures. The aim of this review would be to ensure that all risks are identified and are effectively mitigated. Actions undertaken as part of this review could range from commissioning new research about the geological stability of the Site, to undertaking a major incident drill, to educating users of the Site about its vulnerability. The current close links between the Site owners and managers with the CDDFRS need to continue, to ensure that risk assessment and fire precautions continue to be of the highest quality possible.

Objective 4: Monitor risks and periodically review the risk monitoring process.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Ensure that 'sleepers' are put in strategic locations in the key buildings at the WHS, and that these are regularly monitored;
- Continue to liaise with the County Durham and Darlington Fire and Rescue Service to ensure that risk assessments and fire precautions continue to be of the highest quality possible;
- Regularly review risk assessment and monitoring procedures.

Funding

4.3.35 Funding building repairs and conservation work is a key issue for the long-term management of the Site. It is essential for the conservation of the WHS that funding for these works is secured. In addition, the recommendations contained within this Management Plan will also require funding, over

and above the currently identified works to repair and conserve the built heritage at the Site. The following outlines the current situation with regard to the principal Site owners.

The Castle

- 4.3.36 The key built heritage conservation issue facing the Site in 2005 was the condition of the Castle (see Section 4.4) which was on the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' Register. Following significant work, the Castle is now under active reconsideration of its Buildings at Risk status. Financing such works has been complex due to the University funding arrangements providing restrictions on the use of finances. These restrictions are outlined below.
- 4.3.37 The University's primary funding is from the Higher Education Funding Council for England (HEFCE), which is part of the Central Government's Department of Education, however it is specified by the HEFC that this funding cannot be used for repairs to residential accommodation, which is the primary use of the Castle. It is also not possible for the University to derive funding for the Castle repairs out of its residential income from students, since this is already over-committed to other activities. The University has already reached its borrowing limit against its assets in order to satisfy the demand for the provision of further University residential accommodation, and the necessary upgrading of its existing accommodation stock to meet Health and Safety Executive (HSE), Disability Discrimination Act (DDA) and other statutory requirements. There is no capacity for further borrowing to meet the costs of repairing the Castle.
- 4.3.38 Alternative sources of income potentially include alumni investment and visitor revenue. Alumni investment has allowed for some works of repair to the Castle in the past and could possibly contribute to works in the future, but it is unlikely to be sufficient to meet the total costs. The visitor revenue raised by the Castle goes into a general college fund, which contributes to the maintenance and management of the Castle. With further investment, such as the provision of additional visitor facilities, additional income may be derived from visitors in the future, but current levels of income would not be sufficient to fund repairs. Further consideration of visitors is provided in Section 4.5.
- 4.3.39 The University applied for funding to the HLF in 1999 for a £9M scheme including interpretation and access works. Of this £9M, the University was proposing to find £4M from a combination of fund-raising and an English Heritage grant. The application was refused on principle, although there may be scope for submission of a new bid. English Heritage has subsequently accepted the principle of grant aiding repairs to the Castle within its standard conditions, and has invited the University to both demonstrate need and submit a formal application for funding.

The Cathedral

- 4.3.40 The Cathedral's primary function is as a place of religious worship. The Cathedral and its associated buildings are working buildings in an environment of worship, as well as being the residences of the Cathedral Chapter and some staff, which, as a secondary benefit, enable tourism revenue to contribute to the cost of the upkeep of the estate. The maintenance of all the buildings and public spaces within the Chapter's care uses almost half of the Cathedral's entire annual budget. The Choristers' School and Listed Buildings within the Cathedral College are a particular drain on the Chapter's resources and their maintenance is considered to divert funds away from the primary purpose of the Cathedral as a place of worship.
- 4.3.41 The majority of the funding for Durham Cathedral is derived from asset endowment, visitor income and the management of land. In addition there has in the past been grant aid for the repair of the Cathedral itself, at up to 40 - 50% of costs, from the English Heritage Cathedral Grants Scheme. There are currently no existing sources to fund any new works such as those contained in the Cathedral's new Development Programme. Any further development work will need to be funded out of 'new money'.
- 4.3.42 The aim of the proposed Development Programme is to "*enhance the ministry of the Cathedral*" to its various constituencies in the City, the University, the County, the NE region and beyond. Nine areas have been identified in the Development Programme for future investment at the Cathedral:
- Visitors;
 - Education;
 - Chorister School;
 - Cathedral Music;
 - Libraries;
 - Arts;
 - Various communities/congregations;
 - The fabric of the whole Precinct; and
 - Finance and administration.
- 4.3.43 The Cathedral currently attracts more than 600,000 visitors per annum. The Cathedral does not charge visitors for entry, and is committed to this policy, which is important for maintaining the ambience of the WHS and for conserving the Site's related significances. It is therefore important that the Chapter is supported by the Management Plan in its commitment to providing free entry for all.

Within the essential constraints of maintaining the Cathedral's primary purpose as a place of worship and of providing free entry, it may be possible for the Cathedral to attract more revenue from its visitors both by increasing the number of visitors and increasing the income obtained from existing visitor numbers. As outlined in the Cathedral's Development Programme, a key way of achieving this aim is to provide better services for visitors, including new and improved attractions. Further consideration of visitors is provided in Section 4.5.

St John's College

- 4.3.44 St John's is an independent college separate from the University and governed by its own College Council. It is a company limited by guarantee and a charity exempt from registration. St John's is funded primarily by student maintenance and tuition income from both HEFCE and Church sources. The student fees do not cover the high costs of the maintenance of their historic listed buildings, and the college is dependent on its conference and B&B business, as well as on continued fundraising efforts from alumni and charitable trusts. The College funded the recent alterations to the Chapel and the restoration of the part medieval Parsonage through its own fundraising efforts.

Future Funding across the WHS

- 4.3.45 The key stakeholders in the WHS have core purposes that focus primarily on issues other than conservation of the Site's heritage assets. The owners of the WHS have hoped that the main advantages of being within the WHS would have been:

- A means of increasing the likelihood of receiving grant aid to maintain and conserve the heritage assets; and
- A means of increasing the income from visitors who may be persuaded to come in increasing numbers because of WHS inscription and be willing to spend more when they come.

- 4.3.46 However, in the view of the Site owners, these perceived benefits have not been realised. Furthermore the WHS inscription is perceived in some quarters to have added a further layer of bureaucratic intervention, though others argue that this is not the case. It is hoped that this agreed Management Plan can help dispel the perception of increased bureaucracy amongst the institutional owners of the Site and present a clear case to funding bodies, reassuring them that their funds are working towards a coordinated whole that is well-managed in partnership with stakeholders.

4.3.47 The Management Plan also provides a clear case that the Site has relevance to, and is used by, a variety of individuals, groups and communities (see Section 4.5). Providing funding for activities at the WHS has the potential to benefit a wide range of people, including the residents of Durham, students, school children, worshippers, visitors, volunteers and employees. The implementation of this Management Plan would also enable a more integrated approach to visitors, potentially increasing the revenue received from these visitors by the Site owners (see Section 4.5). This broad constituency of the WHS is likely to be of interest to funders, many of whom have an obligation to ensure that their funding activities benefit as broad a range of people as possible. This range of potential benefits for a wide variety of groups needs to be clearly outlined to funding bodies within new applications.

4.3.48 The Site owners will continue to fund the Site through ongoing maintenance and management activities, and where possible with capital expenditure. However, there is an acknowledged need to deliver major capital projects to address key issues facing the Site. Possible sources of funding for future projects include:

- Heritage Lottery Fund;
- One NorthEast;
- English Heritage;
- Charitable funds such as the Esmeé Fairbairn Foundation;
- Private Sector charitable funding, such as Shell Better Britain, the Lloyds TSB Foundation and Northern Rock;
- Funding from the City of Durham Council (where the project already forms part of their existing discharge of duties);
- Funding through the Durham Partnership, where the project ties in with the development of the Durham Vision, such as with the tourism and access related projects;
- Private fundraising, nationally, regionally, locally and through the University of Durham alumni network and through the Cathedral congregation.

4.3.49 Many of these funding bodies have restrictions on the nature of the institutions they can support. Although many projects on the Site, e.g. repairs to the Castle roof, could potentially be brought forward under current ownership, management and funding regimes, it may not be possible to fund other projects within these structures. Consequently the WHS Coordinating Committee (see Section 4.3) may need to develop new bodies to attract funding and deliver particular projects or types of projects across the Site.

Conclusion

4.3.50 In summary, the key issues for funding at the WHS are:

- The continued need to identify funding for the ongoing conservation of the Castle;
- The need to identify funding for the Cathedral to implement their Development Plan;
- The need to identify funding for implementing the actions proposed by the WHS Management Plan;
- The need to ensure that funding bodies are aware of the wide benefits their funding could bring to the WHS, and to the large number of groups who use and interact with the WHS;
- The restrictions on some of the WH Site's owners with respect to certain channels of funding.

Objective 5: Seek funding for the management, conservation and promotion of the WHS

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Actively seek funding for the Site, within the priorities set out by the WHS Management Plan.

Monitoring and Review

4.3.51 Management planning is a dynamic process and does not stop with the production of a Management Plan document. Monitoring and review of the WHS and its Management Plan is considered in Section 5.0 of this document, and the recommendations for regular annual and 6-yearly monitoring contained in that Section of the Management Plan need to be implemented by the WHS Coordinating Committee. In addition to the intra-Site monitoring, Periodic Reporting also needs to be completed every 6 years; the first round has been completed by the UK and was submitted to the World Heritage Committee by DCMS, the State Party, in 2005-6 (see Section 1.2).

Objective 6: Regularly monitor the condition of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS in line with the indicators in the Management Plan and periodically review the Management Plan

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Monitor the Site on a yearly basis using the agreed indicators;
- Fulfil the State Party requirements for Periodic Reporting every 6 years;
- Review the Management Plan every 6 years.

Informed Conservation and Management

- 4.3.52 The management and conservation of the Site needs to be based on a firm foundation of understanding, to enable the creation of informed decisions. It is widely accepted by conservation practitioners that prior understanding is the best basis for conservation decisions: "*we need to understand what we conserve before we change it, rather than because we have changed it*" (Clark 2001, 8). Without such prior understanding, conservation becomes blind and meaningless. It is also widely accepted that sites such as the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS are dynamic places that need to fulfil contemporary needs in ways that respect the unique legacies of their past: "*understanding can play a positive role in this process by showing how to mitigate destructive change rather than preventing change per se.*" (Clark 2001, 8).
- 4.3.53 As outlined throughout this WHS Management Plan, and particularly in Sections 2.0, 3.0 and 4.0, the history, development and fabric of the Site is generally well understood, though there are key questions that still require resolution (see Theme 4 - Enhancing Understanding of the Site, Section 4.6). This high level of understanding combined with the expert advice available for the Site owners has enabled the historic development of a process of informed conservation at the Site, and this process needs to be supported and further developed.
- 4.3.54 Understanding is a dynamic process that continues through the lifetime of a conservation project, through the lifetime of a WHS Management Plan and beyond. It is therefore important that there is a close relationship between the management of the Site and the creation of understanding about it. This foundation of understanding needs to be updated as new knowledge about the Site is created. The key issues outlined in Theme 4 - Enhancing Understanding of the Site, are therefore of central importance to the informed management of the Site, and require resolution. These key issues include the dissemination of the results of new research, and the ease of availability of archival material.

4.4 Theme 2: Conserving the Site and its Significances

Management of the Built Heritage

Cathedral and Cathedral College

- 4.4.1 The Chapter has an established framework for inspecting and conserving the main building of the Cathedral. It is important for the conservation of the WHS that this framework continues to be implemented. The inspection and conservation framework for the Cathedral contains the following key elements:

- The appointed Architect inspects the Cathedral under a standard quinquennial arrangement, for which he is responsible to the Chapter. The last quinquennial inspections for the Cathedral and Claustral buildings were 2004. The Chorister School was also inspected in 2004 and some other properties are also inspected at other times when vacancies occur. The quinquennial report prioritises maintenance and repair works as 'utmost urgency', required within 6 months, 12 months, 2 years, 5 years and 'long term';
- The Cathedral Clerk of Works carries out a Health and Safety survey of the Cathedral twice annually, and a quarterly maintenance survey;
- The Cathedral has a four weekly 'works progress committee' meeting called by the Chapter Clerk, attended by the Land Agent, the Architect, the Clerk of Works and the resident archaeologist at which all of these survey and inspection reports are considered;
- All works have to be approved by the Cathedral Fabric Committee and effective arrangements are in place for archaeological supervision and recording of any sensitive works.

4.4.2 Prebends Bridge and the buildings in the precinct are subject to quinquennial survey. Whilst the Chapter is responsible for the fabric of the buildings in the College, the residents are responsible for the upkeep of the interiors and interior decoration. The Chapter recognises that it is important that conservation issues in this area are balanced with the need for people to be able to reside happily in the buildings.

4.4.3 In the Cathedral College, maintenance and repair requirements currently present no particular maintenance difficulties nor do they currently require major capital expenditure. However, it is the case that the ongoing demands created by the upkeep of these buildings do cause a major drain on the Cathedral's resources.

4.4.4 The Chapter has not, to date, prepared a Conservation Plan for the Cathedral, the Precinct, the College and the Bridge. The presence of the resident archaeologist and the Cathedral Architect do reduce the need for a plan, however such a document would aid the coordination of works between departments. A Conservation Plan is a particularly important tool when there are outside contractors working on a Site.

4.4.5 It is the case that the Chapter is highly experienced in the application of the principle of "*informed conservation*", which forms the basis of Conservation Planning (see Section 4.3.51), and indeed, could be considered pioneers in its application. However, in the case of the Cathedral College, research has until recently generally been restricted to that necessary to precede development. However, the Cathedral Archaeologist is currently undertaking systematic research of the college buildings which will

greatly enhance our knowledge of this important part of the WHS. Understanding of the College is therefore growing, and the conservation and management of the built heritage of this part of the Cathedral will benefit from this research, which would necessarily be included within any new Conservation Plan. This important research could be linked to wider contextual studies undertaken within the aegis of the proposed WHS Research Strategy (see Section 4.6), which would facilitate connections with other research projects with an interest in the WHS and the Cathedral College, such as the developing Victoria County History and the English Heritage funded North East Regional Research Framework. Through understanding the resource further, the Conservation Plan would enable more targeted coordination of maintenance activity.

- 4.4.6 The Chapter employs a direct works team of about 15 masons, joiners, a plumber and an electrician under the supervision of the Clerk of Works. In addition there are also gardening staff who are responsible for the grounds and the riverbanks. Major works and certain trades are contracted out, using the pool of experienced craftsmen available within the region.

The University

- 4.4.7 The University has overall responsibility for the built heritage on Palace Green and at the Castle; St John's is an independent unit (see 4.4.11). In the case of its colleges, the University divides responsibility for the basic building fabric and for the interiors: in the case of the Castle, the University, through the Director of Estates, is responsible for care of the basic building fabric and the Dean of Colleges is responsible for decoration and other works. The Estates and Buildings Department liaises closely with the City of Durham Council to manage the complex repair and maintenance of the fabric of the Castle, and this Department has appointed their own internal Conservation Officer. All the University building stock, including the Castle and the buildings on Palace Green, is reviewed annually. In addition, the Estates staff 'keep an eye on' the Castle building on a day-to-day basis.
- 4.4.8 The Castle has a history of regular inspections by the Director of Estates office but this is not currently part of a formal quinquennial arrangement. Whilst the regime lapsed after the last quinquennial inspection in 1990, there are plans for such a system to be re-introduced in the future. The Management Plan would support the establishment of a rigorous regime of inspection, and a dedicated maintenance contract and budget.
- 4.4.9 Currently the Castle building is managed through a series of problem-specific surveys as the need has arisen. In 2003 the appointed Architect prepared a condition survey and report on the Castle. This summarised the repairs carried out in the 20th century to masonry, lead roofs and the Norman door. It

also detailed further necessary repairs to masonry, roofs and to the courtyard and riverbanks, and suggested a programme of works phased between 2004 and 2023.

- 4.4.10 The University Estates and Buildings Department employs a direct works team including plasterers, plumbers and electricians. This team carries out most maintenance and repair works on the Castle, whereas major works and capital works projects are contracted out to suitable building firms on day work arrangements, under the supervision of the consultant Architect, the University Estates Department's Conservation Officer, the Castle Curator and in liaison with the Local Authority Conservation Officer. A substantial Conservation Plan for the Castle was written a few years ago, and was recently reviewed by its original author.

Management of the Built Heritage of St John's

- 4.4.11 St John's has an internal Maintenance Department, and a consultant architect who advises on the college fabric. Repairs are undertaken within the context of a 5-year maintenance plan, which in 2004 is in its fourth year and is due to be reviewed and renewed. There is no Conservation Plan for the Chapel of St Mary the Less nor for the Parsonage; for these buildings a short Conservation Statement may be of use in highlighting significance and coordinating conservation activity. Both structures have recently undergone substantial renovation (2001-2002), with the part medieval Parsonage requiring particularly delicate repair. This process was informed by the relevant experts and expertise, including the City of Durham's Conservation Officers, the Cathedral Archaeologist and English Heritage. There are no current built heritage issues reported for the Chapel of St Mary the Less and the Parsonage.

Funding and Support for Built Heritage Conservation

- 4.4.12 In order for the Site owners and managers to continue to undertake the appropriate and sensitive management of the WH Site's built heritage resource, a suitable level of funding is required. The achievement of appropriate levels of funding is a key objective for this WHS Management Plan (see Section 4.3). The WHS owners and managers are also currently in receipt of high quality built heritage conservation advice and support from agencies with an interest in the Site, including the City of Durham Council and English Heritage. It is important that this level of support continues in the future, and the current good relations between the Site owners and the statutory advisory bodies are conserved.

Objective 7: Continue to monitor and deepen an understanding of the built heritage resource to ensure that change is well managed and problems are rapidly identified and addressed.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Continue to undertake and implement the quinquennial inspections for the Cathedral, Cathedral Precinct, College and Prebends Bridge;
- Consider the creation of a Conservation Plan for the Cathedral, Cathedral Precinct, College and Bridge;
- Implement a programme of quinquennial inspections for the Castle;
- Consider the creation of a Conservation Statement for St Mary the Less and the Parsonage.

Objective 8: Ensure that the WH Site's owners are supported and enabled in their management and conservation of the WHS.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Seek to ensure that the WHS owners have the appropriate funding in order to complete their conservation works;
- Continue the good working relationship between the WHS owners and advisory partners such as English Heritage and City of Durham Council.

Physical Conservation of the Built Heritage

- 4.4.13 The Castle, the Cathedral and many other local buildings are constructed of locally available sandstone. Due to the nature of this material, the sandstone is friable, riddled with weak pockets of softer material and very liable to erosion of the surface, particularly in areas where the wind creates eddy currents. The deterioration of the stone is exacerbated by pollutants present in the air in the past 200 years, and by past inappropriate attempts at repair or repointing. The ongoing conservation of the buildings' masonry is the perhaps the single largest built conservation challenge facing the entire Site.

Key Built Heritage Issues Facing the Chapter

- 4.4.14 The general condition of the Cathedral fabric is highly acceptable, given the age of the building and the costs and programme difficulties inherent in maintaining its condition to such a high standard. However there are some areas of the complex that show significant deterioration. As outlined above, the principal problem facing the Cathedral Chapter is the condition of the sandstone of which the Cathedral is constructed. The problems inherent with this material are exacerbated by the exposed nature of the Site. The Chapter is committed to a long-term masonry repair project for the entire external fabric. This project was begun in the 1970s and has a pragmatic philosophy of stone replacement within 100-50-25 year bands; it is estimated that the work will take about 100 years to complete and that that is sufficient to keep pace with the continuing decay in the masonry. The work at

the Nine Altars under this programme has received praise from conservationists as being exemplary work. A major repair to the Refectory Roof is nearing completion.

- 4.4.15 In addition to the problems caused by the building's stone, the Chapter also has to contend with more standard built heritage issues, such as the continuing normal deterioration of roof slates and lead work, gutters and downpipes. Whilst The Chorister School and other buildings in the Cathedral College currently have no major maintenance difficulties, there was a small issue with the structural integrity of the chimneys in the College, which has been subject to a programme of repair and is nearing completion.
- 4.4.16 Prebends Bridge is also the responsibility of the Chapter and is subject to quinquennial inspection by the Cathedral Architect. The Bridge roadway has been resurfaced and its drainage improved, which has removed the problem of water getting to the stone of the arches; the masonry remains to be repaired and the eastern arch of the Bridge has been scaffolded to protect the public should small pieces of stone be dislodged onto the path by frost or ice. A structural engineer is advising on ways to resolve an issue of spring water on the bank and work remains to be done.

Key Built Heritage Issues Facing the University

- 4.4.17 During development of the WHS Management Plan, it was noted that: "Though the general condition of the building fabric of the Castle is not poor, the deterioration of certain key roofs of the Castle, including the roof over the Norman Gallery, make it vulnerable to being at risk if roof renewal is not undertaken in the short to medium term". At the time of the Plan sign off, a programme of roof repair has been completed by the University, through the implementation of the most recent survey of the Castle, prioritising maintenance and repair works on an annual basis over the next 20 years. As with the Cathedral, one of the major problems facing the Castle is the poor quality of its masonry. Continuing deterioration is inherent due to the nature of the sandstone but this process has been accelerated both by the exposed nature of the Site, and particularly by the saturation of areas of masonry caused by leaking lead and slate roofs, lead gutters, downpipes and the failure of drip and roll mouldings. Unlike the Cathedral, a rolling programme of stone repair is not currently being undertaken.
- 4.4.18 It is in recognition of the condition of these key roofs that the Castle was put on English Heritage's 'Building at Risk' Register. This describes the Castle as a Grade I listed building in fair condition with a Class C priority of action (i.e. "*slow decay; no solution agreed*"). The areas in need of attention are specified as "*deteriorating condition in certain roofs and stonework*". The stonework deterioration needs addressing at the Castle, however this factor in isolation would not be sufficient to place the

Castle on the Register. It is important for the conservation of the Castle and for the future management of the WHS that the works required to remove the Castle from the 'Buildings at Risk' Register are funded and completed as a matter of priority. The removal of the Castle from the Register is one of the key projects contained within this WHS Management Plan.

- 4.4.19 In conclusion, a programme of repair of the Castle's roof fabric was urgently recommended and a long-term masonry repair project devised for the external fabric, sufficient to keep pace with the continuing decay in the masonry. (NB: The repairs to the Castle roof have since been undertaken and as a result its Buildings at Risk status is actively under reconsideration by English Heritage).
- 4.4.20 During development of the Management Plan, some significant built heritage conservation issues with the University buildings on Palace Green were identified. These included the medieval Exchequer building being in urgent need of repairs to its roof, replacing the existing aluminium, with lead. This has since been completed. The Bishop Cosin Library is currently undergoing repairs to resolve several environmental problems with the structure. It was threatened by severe damp penetration, which not only threatened the fabric of the building but also its use as an archive for a unique 17th century library, but this problem is now thought to have been resolved. Other issues on Palace Green included the need for the replacement of the roofs of the Music School (this has also been undertaken together with the replacement of dormer windows and conservation of the associated stonework); repairs to the roofs of all the buildings on the Green; repair work to the public toilets; repairs to stonework on the Palace Green Almshouses and to the Bishop Cosin Almshouses at 7 Owengate. Of these essential works, only the repairs to the Music School roofs and the resolution of the environmental problems at the Cosin Library are currently in hand; it is thought that the repairs to the Exchequer roof will cost in the region of £150,000 and that the total outstanding repair bill for Palace Green is in excess of nearly £12 million.

St Mary the Less and the Parsonage

- 4.4.21 There are no known built heritage issues facing the church of St Mary the Less and the Parsonage, which have both recently undergone extensive restoration and renovation.

Other Issues Facing the Built Heritage of the WHS

- 4.4.22 The Cathedral and University buildings on Palace Green are secured at night and there is no reported recurrent problem of damage caused by vandalism, graffiti or, as is increasingly common, to low walls and steps by skateboarders. Security cameras monitor the WHS and buildings and there is little reported deliberate damage or theft. Many of the Cathedral and Castle windows are presently

unprotected and there is no history of vandal damage to them. The University and the students who are privileged to reside in the Castle are conscious of the importance of the building, and are proud of it. The interior and environs of the Castle buildings show no signs of casual damage or misuse, and there is no reported problem of vandalism or graffiti. When small incidents do occur, these are dealt with adequately and effectively by the University College administration.

- 4.4.23 In the Cathedral visitor numbers are effectively controlled by the difficulties of access, particularly for coaches, and the buildings can cope well with the present numbers. The Cathedral Architect was not aware of any undue wear or damage caused by concentration of visitor numbers in any particular location, for example to floor surfaces.
- 4.4.24 There are no current development proposals that significantly affect the building fabric or configuration of the Cathedral, the Castle or the significant buildings on Palace Green. In the Cathedral a new visitor reception desk against the west wall of the nave, in front of the disused west doors, has been constructed. Sensitively installed, this has added benefit of resolving some of the visual clutter afforded by the current visitor leafleting arrangements. In the Castle, proposed alterations to the fabric may be revived as part of a renewed HLF application; these would need to be carefully evaluated to ensure that they do not impact upon the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site.
- 4.4.25 As outlined in the previous section, Conservation Plans and Statements are a key method of managing the conservation of the WH Site's built heritage. It is important that the Conservation Plan for the Castle is maintained, and that consideration is given to providing Conservation Plans, or where appropriate, Conservation Statements, for the key buildings within the WHS.

Objective 9: Ensure that the built heritage of the WHS is conserved, and that sympathetic materials, styles and techniques are utilised by all conservation projects within the WHS.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Continue the long-term programme for repairs to the Cathedral's external stone;
- Continue the conservation of the College and Prebends Bridge;
- Devise and implement a long-term programme of external stone repair and where necessary, replacement, for the Castle;
- Complete the necessary building conservation works on Palace Green;
- Devise and implement Conservation Plans for the key buildings in the WHS (see Objective 7).

Objective 10: Complete the works necessary to remove the Castle from the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' Register.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Agree and implement an appropriate conservation programme for the Castle, ideally using a current Conservation Plan as a tool.

Archaeology and Architectural History

- 4.4.26 The archaeology of the WHS and its setting is managed by a number of individuals and bodies. The Cathedral has a resident archaeologist as well as an independent archaeological advisor who sits on the Fabric Advisory Committee. Development activity that may impact on archaeological deposits elsewhere within the WHS is monitored by the County Archaeologist (of Durham County Council), under PPG 16 requirements or through Listed Building consent conditions.
- 4.4.27 The Cathedral's resident archaeologist is largely concerned with the conservation, preservation and restoration of the physical remains of the Cathedral. This work includes the recording of the building's upstanding and below-ground fabric, and the monitoring of any ground cutting activity within the Cathedral and its precinct. Ground breaking activity is relatively rare within this area, and is generally limited to such small-scale activity as trenching to repair sewers. There is a statutory requirement for the Cathedral to consult an independent archaeological consultant, and they act as an independent advisor. Any work to the Cathedral that would impact upon its upstanding or buried archaeology needs to be agreed by the local Fabric Advisory Committee and the national Cathedral Fabric Commission. These requirements ensure that the preservation, conservation and restoration of the Cathedral is kept to a very high level, with a high level of management of the resource. It is important that this level of management of the archaeological resource continues at the Cathedral, and that the Chapter continue to fulfil their statutory obligations, including employing the services of both a resident archaeologist and consultant archaeologist.
- 4.4.28 In addition to the County Archaeologist, the Cathedral's resident archaeologist monitors impacts to archaeology in the Cathedral College, whilst any work that may affect the buried archaeology at the Castle is monitored by arrangement with the University's Archaeology Department. The latter has no statutory responsibility for monitoring the archaeological resource but has an arrangement with the Castle that they will act as the College's archaeological contractor in discharging any archaeological requirements placed on statutory listed building work. This could include both pre-application assessment work and post-approval monitoring and recording.

- 4.4.29 Records and archives relating to the Site's archaeology are dispersed across several locations. The University's Archaeology Department has a significant archive of records in addition to the records held in the main University Library, in special collections and in the Colleges. The County Sites and Monuments Record (SMR) also holds some records, whilst the Cathedral also has a large archive. There is no single depository for the archaeological records of the WHS, and gaining successive access to all of these archives in turn is sometimes experienced as being a complicated and time-consuming process. Closer links need to be sought between the various archives, to make this process easier for the researcher. The County SMR is the statutory repository for records of the historic environment and particularly those generated by the planning and listed building consent functions. The extensive and detailed interventions made by the Cathedral's archaeologist over many years are not at present incorporated into the SMR, and there is a need for the Management Plan to address this matter.
- 4.4.30 There is no integrated research framework for the WHS, for the peninsula or for medieval Durham as a whole. Such a framework is important to ensure that conservation decisions are taken in an informed manner, always with regard for the wider historic and archaeological context, rather than simply focussed on the immediate area of disturbance. Small pieces of research work, particularly into buildings, are sometimes carried out at the WHS by a number of private individuals and institutions, however the results of these are not usually widely disseminated. A Research Framework for the Historic Environment of the region is currently being devised, and it is important that the needs of the archaeological resource of the WHS are addressed within this.
- 4.4.31 There are several areas of archaeological and historic environment research that would benefit the management of the significance of the archaeology and historic environment of the Site. These are addressed in Section 4.6.

Objective 11: Continue to develop and implement the high quality management of the Peninsula's archaeological and architectural history resource.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Support the Cathedral's ongoing employment of their resident archaeologist and consultant archaeologist;
- Explore methods of sharing information across all the archaeological repositories in the City and County to share best practice, information and research;
- Explore the possibility of linking the Cathedral's archaeological archive with the statutory repository of the County Sites and Monuments Record (see Objective 22);

- Ensure that the WHS and its archaeology and architectural history is incorporated within the emerging North East Regional Research Framework for the Historic Environment.

Townscape, Landscape and Open Spaces

- 4.4.32 The WHS is situated on a dramatic peninsula adjacent to the City Centre. As described in Section 2.3, the town and peninsula contribute significantly to the character, setting and 'sense of place' of the Site. Within the WHS there are two distinctive areas of townscape, which also contain areas of open space, namely Palace Green and the Cathedral College. These make a valuable contribution to the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site as part of the defended Cathedral-Castle complex, and to the character, attractiveness and amenity of the WHS.

Palace Green

- 4.4.33 Palace Green has a high quality townscape character with its medieval and later buildings, including the Cathedral and Castle, surrounding the central open space. In turn Palace Green provides an important setting for the medieval architecture of the iconic Cathedral and of the Castle; it is a key visual and physical link between these elements and it is generally the point of arrival for most visitors to the Site and to the buildings it contains. Another key feature of Palace Green is the glimpsed views out from the peninsula that are obtained between buildings. It is important that these are retained within the context of any new development or landscaping schemes.
- 4.4.34 The most significant issue facing Palace Green is the use of the space for car parking for University staff, for visitors to the Cathedral and for the general public. This use is perceived to impact on the peacefulness and visual quality of the space; on the historical accuracy of its composition; and on the quality of the setting that it provides for the Cathedral. The successful and inclusive resolution of the issue of car use within the WHS is a long-term aim of this Plan, and is discussed in more detail in Section 4.7.
- 4.4.35 There is also an opportunity within the context of the Management Plan to further research the historic design of Palace Green, and to seek the reinstatement of appropriate historic streetscape features. For example, most of the pavements are currently concrete flag, whilst the road and car parking areas are tarmac. Careful research into the history of Palace Green and into the range of flooring materials now available may reveal sensitive and appropriate flooring solutions for this area. Any solutions proposed would need to be robust enough to withstand modern use and would need to be historically and aesthetically correct. An in depth research project would illuminate past designs for this area, and highlight features, such as street furniture, that require restoration and potentially reinstatement. Any

new design for this area would need to be sensitive to the character of the WHS and conserve its Outstanding Universal Value and related significances. A masterplan for the University estate has been completed in consultation with Durham County and City of Durham Councils and includes proposals for Palace Green. This can be viewed on the University website. www.dur.ac.uk.

Cathedral College

- 4.4.36 The Cathedral College is an intimate townscape that forms part of the setting of the Cathedral, and which is historically significant in its own right. The composition of the College, with the domestic buildings surrounding a central open space is an important part of its character and needs to be retained. As with Palace Green, the Cathedral College contains a number of glimpsed views, and these should be identified and conserved.
- 4.4.37 The Cathedral College is a living townscape, containing a thriving school and a community in residence. The Chorister School is currently the focus of a masterplanning process, with the aim of providing for the future needs of the school. It is important that any proposed changes to the townscape of the Cathedral College brought about by the implementation of this masterplan are appropriate to the character, significances and Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.
- 4.4.38 The Cathedral College retains a range of traditional floorscape materials and these should be retained and conserved. As with Palace Green, the area would benefit from research into its historic form, and the potential restoration of historic streetscape features.
- 4.4.39 Like Palace Green the Cathedral College is also used for car parking. This use of the space is moderated by the Chapter and is kept to a level consistent with residential and operational needs; a car parking management regime has recently been agreed with City of Durham Council for the Cathedral College. This policy of keeping car parking in the College to a minimum consistent with the above needs is supported by the Plan and should continue, to ensure that car parking does not dominate the currently peaceful atmosphere of this area. During term-time, at the beginning and end of the school day, the area becomes a thoroughfare for cars, picking children up from the school. This impacts upon the peaceful nature of the College townscape and is discussed further in Section 4.7.

Objective 12: Conserve and enhance the historic fabric, character and form of the Peninsula's and the WH Site's historic townscapes, landscapes and open spaces.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Research historic options for, and if appropriate restore, the historic form and streetscape details of Palace Green and the Cathedral College.

Intangible Qualities and Skills

Intangible Qualities

4.4.40 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS encapsulates a wide variety of intangible qualities and significances, some of which directly contribute to the Site's Outstanding Universal Value. A description of these is provided in section 2.5 and 3.4 of this Management Plan. Approaches to the conservation of the Site's intangible qualities are multiple and varied. For example, the continued practice of religion and religious activity at the WHS will ensure the conservation of the unbroken tradition of spirituality and sacredness at the Site, which is part of the Site's Outstanding Universal Value. Similarly the Outstanding Universal Value of the tradition of community living practiced at the Site would be conserved through the continued use of the Cathedral College by residential members of the Chapter, and of the Castle by the students of the University College. The continued educational activity of the University and the Choristers' School will ensure the conservation of the tradition of education, learning and knowledge, which is a broader significance of the WHS. Creativity and artistic expression can be conserved and enhanced through the provision of opportunities to strengthen these practices and associations. Such opportunities could include the staging of exhibitions and events, and awareness raising about the WHS and its artistic tradition. Similarly, the community connections with the WHS can be conserved through continuing such community traditions as the Miners' Gala, and actively pursuing community links with the WHS.

4.4.41 The knowledge-based intangible qualities and significances of the WHS need to be conserved through the perpetuation of this knowledge, through educational programmes and promotion. Many of the knowledge-based values present at the WHS directly contribute to the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS and include values such as spirituality and sacredness, pilgrimage and sanctuary, cult and sainthood, conflict and resolution and some historical associations. However, each of these intangible values also has a practical aspect to its nature, and their conservation goes beyond education, to include:

- The conservation of the sense of place at the WHS, which provides a welcome refuge and sanctuary from the busy world, regardless of the purpose of the visit to the Site;
- The active support of the continued practice of pilgrimage to the Site, undertaken by Christians and potentially also by those of other faiths from all over the world;

- The continuation of the central role of prayers for peace and the resolution of conflict within the philosophy of the Cathedral.

4.4.42 Research into the intangible qualities and significances of the WHS is in its infancy at Durham. Conservation of these qualities and significances would benefit from a programme of research, which would not only seek to identify and document new intangible qualities and significances of the Site, but would also seek to understand the meaning of this intangible heritage to contemporary and past societies. The programme would assess the effectiveness of various modes of communication and methods of increasing awareness of this heritage within contemporary society. Through this research programme a coherent strategy for the conservation of the entirety of the Site's intangible heritage could be created.

Objective 13: Continue to research, document and conserve the WH Site's intangible values, qualities and significances.

Skills

4.4.43 There are four main groups of skills practised at the Site that contribute to the Site's related significances. These are the skills relating to:

- Christian worship;
- Education;
- Built Heritage Conservation; and
- Music.

4.4.44 Christian worship is the oldest ongoing use of the Site. In addition to being an important significance in its own right, this unbroken use of the Site for Christian worship is part of the cultural and religious traditions associated with the relics of St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, and therefore directly contributes to the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site. It is therefore essential that the Cathedral's skills base in this field is supported and further developed as necessary. In addition, St John's College is an important centre for the training of ordinands, and the college chapel of St Mary the Less and the meditation space in the Parsonage, both within the WHS, provide important resources for these students. Regular services are held in the Cathedral, in the chapel of St Mary the Less and in the Castle's Tunstal Chapel.

- 4.4.45 The role of the University and the Choristers' School as educational establishments also contributes to the broader significance of the site, and, again, the University's and School's educational skills base also need to be supported.
- 4.4.46 The active conservation of the architectural Outstanding Universal Value of the Cathedral, Palace Green and the Castle requires the employment of a number of skilled craftspeople, both as permanent employees of the institutions and as firms and individuals contracted to complete specific projects. It is important that both the private sector firms, and the institutions' own craftspeople continue to be supported. For the past 6 years the Cathedral has directly employed 7 masons and 3 joiners. The Cathedral has its own masons' yard, within the Cathedral College. The University does not retain full-time masons, preferring to use the private sector skills-base. The University does retain a number of permanent joiners, and these are considered to be of a very high standard.
- 4.4.47 Whilst masons and traditional joiners are generally in low demand in the UK, the requirements of authenticity and informed conservation in such unique buildings mean that the WH Site's workforce comprise an important reservoir of traditional skills, keeping these skills alive and in practice. This not only benefits the Cathedral and the University, ensuring that their fabric is authentically conserved and the physical history and needs of the buildings understood, but is also important for conserving a pool of practiced knowledge with which to conserve other features of the global built heritage resource. Not least, these skills form an important part of the global heritage in their own right.
- 4.4.48 The Cathedral and the University provide in-house apprenticeships for built heritage conservation, and their forces have been joined to create an even stronger case for external funding for this project.
- 4.4.49 Church music is an essential component of the religious and cultural traditions associated with St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, and is therefore part of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site. The Cathedral is the largest musical foundation in the region, and is recognised widely as being a centre of excellence for the active conservation of the tradition of English Church Music. The Cathedral helps to support the Choristers' School, which trains children in musical skills, and the Cathedral itself trains the Cathedral Choristers in the skills necessary for choral-led worship. In addition to the Cathedral Choir, which includes men as well as boys, the Cathedral also has a mixed choir (The Cathedral Consort of Singers) and an organist, assistant organist and organ scholar. Regular organ recitals are held at the Cathedral, for which there is a waiting list of performers, along with choral events and other musical concerts.

4.4.50 The Cathedral recognises the central importance of music to its mission, and proposes that the music skills at the Cathedral should be further developed and supported. The Cathedral Development Plan includes such key actions as:

- Developing links with the new Regional Music Centre at Gateshead and placing the Cathedral's musical expertise at the disposal of the Diocese;
- Continuing to provide chorister bursaries (up to 22 individuals);
- Establishing a Chair in Sacred Music with the University and St Chad's College;
- Providing instrumental scholarships and scholarships for the Cathedral Consort of Singers;
- Commissioning new music;
- Implementing further staffing developments and their resources;
- Eventually building a Nave organ.

4.4.51 St John's College also supports the ongoing conservation of liturgical music. The college chapel, St Mary the Less, contains a fine organ, and the college supports an organ scholar every year.

Objective 14: Continue to support the skills present at the WHS, including those skills relating to Christian worship, education, built heritage conservation and music.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Ensure the continuing primary uses of the WHS for Christian Worship and for education;
- Ensure the continued conservation of the Christian values and practices of the WHS, which contribute to the WH Site's Outstanding Universal Value;
- Support the development of the built heritage conservation apprenticeship schemes;
- Support the Cathedral's plans for developing musical skills.

Collections

4.4.52 Both the Cathedral and the University house significant collections within the WHS, and these contribute to the Site's Outstanding Universal Value. Both institutions have developed large collections that relate to their histories, missions and associations. These collections include works of art, books and artefacts of a variety of forms (see Section 2.6).

- 4.4.53 The Cathedral's artefacts are carefully managed by the Chapter: the valuable artefacts are kept secure within the vault housing the Treasures of St Cuthbert exhibition, and the books are conserved under the careful management of the Chapter Librarian. The Cathedral has recently produced an inventory of its possessions, a project which has taken 10 years to complete.
- 4.4.54 University College has recently completed a catalogue of all of their artwork, which has involved research into the history of each item and digital photography of each piece. All these artefacts are security coded. The Castle is responsible for its own collections, independently of the University. University College has an appointed person to act as curator, and have developed an Acquisitions Policy. The high quality of curatorship employed by the Castle is recognised in University College's status as a Registered Museum.
- 4.4.55 The University Library is responsible for all the books, manuscripts, archives and other collections within their care. The Library employs qualified librarians to curate these collections and achieves a high standard of curatorial care. The conservation of the unique Cosin Library has been recently challenged through environmental problems in the building; works have recently been undertaken to address these issues.
- 4.4.56 The collections contained within St Mary the Less and the Parsonage are curated by St John's College.
- 4.4.57 It is important that the security and curation processes used for the conservation of the Site's portable artefacts are kept under regular review. This will ensure that procedures are kept up to date using best practices and that these procedures reflect the changing needs of the collections and the WHS.
- 4.4.58 Currently, access to the WH Site's portable collections is limited (see Section 4.7). Consideration needs to be given to finding ways to improve access, such as the controlled opening of non-public collections to the public, through changing exhibitions, or through special events.

Registered Museum Status

- 4.4.59 The Castle is the only Registered Museum within the WHS, though both the Old Fulling Mill of Archaeology, and the Durham Heritage Centre and Museum, located outside of the WHS, are also Registered Museums. The University Library has expressed an interest in applying for Registered Museum status for some of its collections. The Cathedral recently reviewed the benefits of Registered Museum status and decided that this scheme was not appropriate at present.

4.4.60 The Registered Museum programme is a voluntary minimum standards scheme that measures museum performance against accepted professional standards. Registered Museum status may bring a number of benefits to the WH Site's museums and collections, not least through:

- Providing public recognition that a museum meets approved standards in certain key areas of museum management, collection care and public services;
- Fostering confidence amongst potential donors of objects or collections that the Registered Museum is, in principle, a suitable repository; and
- Providing general eligibility for grant aid and subsidised services offered by a number of national and regional bodies.

Objective 15: Further develop the high standard of collections curation at the WHS

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Regularly review security measures for collections held at the WHS;
- Research and consult to assess whether Registered Museum status would benefit the University Library collections.

4.5 Theme 3: Using the Site

The University

4.5.1 The University of Durham is one of the UK's top 12 research universities with two campuses in the City of Durham and in Stockton-on-Tees. The University has over 11,000 full-time, 1,500 part-time students and about 150 visiting students, who read for a range of undergraduate and postgraduate degrees in science, technology, the arts, languages and social sciences, and update their professional skills in business, IT, social work, languages, and education. As the third biggest employer in Durham it employs over 3,000 people.

4.5.2 The WHS is the historic heart of this internationally renowned University. The Castle, one of the iconic buildings within the WHS, is home to University College, the oldest of the Durham Colleges and Societies. University College now houses over 360 students in the Castle and in purpose-built modern accommodation at the Site, and is the social centre for a further 300 students who live in the surrounding area. The College houses academic facilities for its students, such as a library, computing centre and tutorial rooms, as well as providing catering, bars and social functions. University College is one of the University's most popular colleges, and academic entrance is always over subscribed.

- 4.5.3 The Castle functions as a bed and breakfast service for visitors to the City outside of University term-time and is also popular as a conference and wedding facility. It operates as a visitor attraction in both term and holiday-time and acts as a venue for concerts and events of many types, which are often open to the public.
- 4.5.4 In addition to the Castle, Palace Green is also owned and managed by the University. This area of the WHS also houses University functions, such as Congregations which are held in the Cathedral, and public events. The University's Ceremonial Congregation is a gathering of members and friends of the University to witness and celebrate the conferring of degrees. Palace Green also houses one of the University libraries, the Palace Green Library, with its special collections of local historical records, which are extensively used by local researchers as well as University academics.
- 4.5.5 With its origins as the parish church of one of the smallest parishes in England, during the past 100 years St Mary the Less has served the college community of St John's. The chapel is of particular importance to the men and women who train for the Christian ministry at the college. Regular services take place within the Chapel, and in term-time the Chapel is in use three times each weekday. The Chapel is also used by other Christian denominations, such as the University's CathSoc (Catholic Society) and is often used for worship and for quiet reflection by those who attend conferences at the College. The public can visit the chapel outside term time and a key can be obtained from the College Office at any time during office hours for entry into the Chapel.
- 4.5.6 The historical use of the medieval Parsonage is not clear, and though its name would suggest that the chapel's parson resided in the building, this is not certain. Following its recent restoration, the parsonage is now used as a music rehearsal room downstairs and as a quiet room / store for chapel books and hymnals upstairs.
- 4.5.7 The WHS therefore houses a wide range of University functions. The facilities related to these functions and the needs of their uses change through time, and it is therefore likely that the University will, in future, need to change its use of key buildings and implement other related developments.
- 4.5.8 It is important that any such changes are in keeping with the character of the WHS, and conserve its Outstanding Universal Value and related significances

Objective 16: Ensure that the aims of the University complement the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS.

The Cathedral, Precinct and College

The Cathedral and Precinct

- 4.5.9 The primary purpose of the Cathedral and its Precinct is as a place of Christian worship. All other uses need to flow from, and support, this central mission.
- 4.5.10 Services have been held at Durham Cathedral since its foundation, and this forms one of the key functions of the Cathedral. Part of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS comprises the cultural and religious traditions and historical memories associated with St Cuthbert and the Venerable Bede, the unbroken tradition of Christian worship, begun with the arrival of the body of St Cuthbert on the peninsula. Christian worship is therefore a key component of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site. There are now over 1300 routine services held each year at the Cathedral, with the average year also containing an additional 130 or more special liturgical events and services. Attendance at these services and events range from a handful at the daily early morning Holy Communion, held in one of the Cathedral's many side chapels, to over 3000 for the annual Christmas Eve service of Nine Lessons and Carols. The daily round of services includes Holy Communion, Morning and Evening Prayer, which is usually a sung evensong. Weekly prayers for peace and justice are also held.
- 4.5.11 The Cathedral is the centre of a wide community and congregation; through its Development Plan, which is currently in preparation, the Chapter is considering which projects it wishes to progress in order to further the Cathedral's ministry in many areas of its life. Such changes may include: development of the nave area; investment in liturgical flexibility; the funding of flowers; lighting and other issues regarding the layout of the Cathedral interior for liturgical purposes.
- 4.5.12 Within the Cathedral itself a number of uses of the Site are sustained. In addition to the provision of services, the Cathedral is also:
- A centre of study and learning;
 - The shrine of St Cuthbert;
 - The shrine of the Venerable Bede
 - A place of pilgrimage
 - A place of reflection;
 - A visitor attraction;
 - A concert venue;

- A facility used on occasion for conferences
- An exhibition space;
- The home of a restaurant, book and gift shop;
- A musical training centre;
- A specialist theological library;
- A place of craftsmanship in stone and wood; and
- Used on occasion as a film set.

4.5.13 Each of these uses needs to be accommodated within the buildings in a way that does not cause conflict between them, that supports and enables the primary use of the Site and in a way that respects the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site. With a 1000-year history of continuous management of the Site, the Cathedral Chapter is adept and experienced in resolving these issues.

The Cathedral College and Chorister School

4.5.14 Community living, begun by the Community of St Cuthbert, is a component of the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site, as a cultural tradition associated with St Cuthbert. Whilst the monastic function of the Site has been redundant since the Dissolution, the tradition of community living within the Cathedral College is conserved through the presence of the boarders at the Chorister School and the residential members of the Chapter. The Chorister School is a key use of the Cathedral College and also conserves the tradition of learning at the Site, begun by the medieval monks. The Chorister School has been in Durham for the last 600 years and was founded between 1390 and 1416. Until 1541 the school housed 5 to 8 pupils, and stayed in the region of 20 pupils until the 1940s when the school was given permission to expand. The number of pupils varies from term to term between 180 and 200, of whom 60 are pre-Prep. The school is co-educational, with children ranging in age from 4-13.

4.5.15 A review of the Chorister School is currently being undertaken which will encompass a comprehensive masterplanning exercise. This process is intended to provide a long-term plan for the future development of the school, focussing on interior design and spatial reorganisation, whilst retaining the School's unique characteristics and core values. The Cathedral Chapter has expressed a clear desire that the Chorister School remains in its current location, and that its essential work of supporting the Cathedral Choir is continued. It is important that the development of this masterplan and other future proposals for the School are informed by the WHS Management Plan, and that any proposals are in accordance with the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS.

- 4.5.16 A further use of the Cathedral College is as a home for the Cathedral's Education and Resources Centre. Of the Cathedral's half a million visitors a year, nearly 20,000 are school children. The specific needs of this visitor group are well-provided for within the Cathedral Education and Resources Centre's recently converted building (see Section 4.6).

Objective 17: Ensure that Christian worship remains the primary use of the Cathedral, and that other uses of the WHS do not impact upon this function.

Community

- 4.5.17 The WHS is an important community centre, both for the residents of Durham and for those spread further afield. The University is the centre of an international alumni association, with members across the globe, all of which consider the WHS to be the heart of their old University.
- 4.5.18 Both the Cathedral and University provide obvious community resources, including the formal religious, pastoral care and educational roles of these two institutions, and extending from these into meeting, exhibition and conference venues. Both the Cathedral and the University are important local social centres, providing opportunities for social interaction and the extension of networks of friendship and support.
- 4.5.19 Removed from the hubbub of the City centre, the WHS is an important peaceful resource for the people of the City, who particularly use the Cathedral as a quiet space for peaceful thought; a breathing space within the stresses and strains of the world.
- 4.5.20 The Cathedral also houses memorials of local significance, including the Durham Light Infantry Chapel and the Miners' Memorial. Both of these memorials commemorate the lives lost during war and dangerous industry, with the Book of Remembrance recording the names of all who lost their lives in the mines of County Durham. Though the County Durham mines are now closed, the industry is still within living memory, and crowds still gather in the Cathedral for the Miners' Gala Day service, which is preceded by a parade through the City.
- 4.5.21 The WHS has long been used as a local and regional landmark, and provides an iconic centre for the maintenance of local identity. This function of the WHS could be increased, through more prominent use of the peninsula skyline and the iconic architecture in local and regional publicity.

Objective 18: Maintain, enhance and support community access and activities in the WHS.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Continue to provide community facilities and events at the WHS;
- Ensure that community uses of the Peninsula conserve the WH Site's Outstanding Universal Value and related significances;
- Increase the use of the WHS as a local and regional icon.

Tourism

Overview

- 4.5.22 Whilst tourism is not the primary use of the WHS, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS has much to offer the visitor and Durham was once a popular destination on tours of 'historic Britain'. A stopover visit to the Cathedral featured on the list of options for overseas visitors on the 'milk run' from London to Edinburgh during the 1980s and 1990s. Since then, traditional attractions and new entrants to the market have been chasing fewer overseas tourists: those destinations that have continued to invest in product refreshment and marketing are being most successful at attracting this declining overseas tourist market. Today, for many overseas tourists the 'Durham experience' is restricted to the iconic view from the train as they head for Edinburgh on their round-Britain travel deals.
- 4.5.23 Durham does not currently enjoy a compelling 'must visit' image in the UK domestic market, whether for overnight tourism or for day trips. There is no proactive ownership of the marketing of the City or the WHS. There is currently minimal reference to Durham's WHS status in tourist literature. In the late 1990s the number of tourists estimated to stay overnight in the City of Durham was relatively low, at just over 200,000 per annum, with an estimated 1.3 million leisure daytrips made to the City.
- 4.5.24 For many visitors the best-known aspect of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS visitor experience is probably the view of the Cathedral and the Castle set within the wooded riverbanks of the peninsula. There appears to be a perception amongst visitors that taking in this view, and entering the Cathedral for a quick look around, is sufficient to 'do' the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS experience. There is a danger that such perceptions lead to visitors only allocating a short period of time to the WHS and the City. This limits the capacity for encouraging visitors to explore other aspects of the Site once they have arrived, and hence limits the opportunity to grow their level of spend both at the WHS and in the broader City.

The Tourism Market for the WHS

- 4.5.25 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS draws from a relatively modest potential visitor market. Typically, visitor experiences draw from both the population resident within two hour's drive time, the distance within which the majority of day visits are taken, and from the tourist market staying overnight within one hour's drive time. Durham's tourism market is primarily domestic and sits within a two-hour resident market of just under 4.9 million. Some 3.8 million domestic tourists are estimated to stay overnight within one hour's drive of the Site. Fewer than 600,000 international tourists are estimated to stay overnight in the same area. The markets available for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS are therefore considerably lower than those of other heritage cities such as York, Canterbury, Bath and Salisbury. This is particularly the case for the international market, which is nearly half the size of the international market in Canterbury and Salisbury, and only just over a fifth of the size of the York international market.

The Visitor Experience of Durham

- 4.5.26 Within the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS, both Durham Cathedral and Durham Castle are open to leisure visitors. However, in reviewing the tourism potential of the WHS it is important to understand that neither the Cathedral nor the Castle exists primarily as a visitor attraction. The Cathedral's primary purpose is to be a place of worship, and it is a requirement of the Chapter that free access to the Cathedral must be maintained. The Castle is home to University College, one of the many colleges of the University of Durham. As it is a fully functioning college, housing and feeding some 500 students in term time, the offer to the visitor is restricted during operational hours. Palace Green houses the special collections of the University Library, as well as several University Departments, and again, the visitor offer is currently restricted due to operational requirements.
- 4.5.27 Hence, whilst the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is seen as key to attracting tourist revenues to the City as a whole, the needs of the institutions to prioritise their primary uses sets limitations to the extent to which tourist revenues can be driven. However, both the Cathedral and the University have indicated that they wish to increase the volume of visitors that they receive and hence to grow revenues. The University had proposed enhancing the visitor experience at the Castle in its 1999 bid for Heritage Lottery Funding for the Castle, and is currently exploring ideas for developing projects to increase public engagement with the Castle, enhancing the visitor experience. The Cathedral is also keen to enhance their visitor experience and they are preparing a Development Plan to improve their visitor and education services. Such developments within the WHS need to be encouraged by the Management Plan. Any potential developments should be in keeping with the Outstanding Universal

Value of the Site and supported through Tourism Network North East and its associated Area Tourism Partnerships.

- 4.5.28 More than 600,000 tourist visits are made to Durham Cathedral each year, and around 26,000 visitors join the guided tours of Durham Castle. No information is available on the number of visits made to the various paid exhibitions within the Cathedral. The potential for visits to the Castle is restricted by the maximum capacity of the tours, which are limited to 40 people due to the current estimate of the carrying capacity of the Black Stairs, and the need to restrict the tours on days when functions or conferences are being held. There is no information about the number of visits made to the church of St Mary the Less, which is open to visitors on request. Information about this availability is not currently displayed prominently at the church. The lack of detailed information about the number and type of visitors that are attending the WHS is a key issue, as it limits the development of any targeted marketing or coordinated visitor management strategies. Further analysis of the Site's visitors needs to be considered by the WHS Coordinating Committee.
- 4.5.29 Independent visitor access to the Castle is currently managed through three 50-minute afternoon tours, led by a student. These are not available when there is a booking for a function or conference, which is the core business of the University during the vacations. The current guided tours are relatively basic, relying on the skill levels of the students conducting the presentations. As such, without more training for the student guides, the tours are unlikely to meet the increasingly sophisticated requirements of domestic or overseas travel trade operators. However, the personal touch provided by the student guides should not be underestimated, and most visitors appreciate the 'alternative information' they receive about the Castle from the resident student guides: many of the questions asked by visitors about the Site relate to modern student life, rather than the earlier history of the buildings. A fee is charged for joining the tour.
- 4.5.30 Entry to Durham Cathedral is free for all visitors and there is a commitment by the Chapter to retain this free access. Free access creates a welcoming atmosphere at the Cathedral and enables the Cathedral to act as an easily accessible refuge and sanctuary from everyday life, thus continuing the tradition of sanctuary associated with St Cuthbert, and which contributes to the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site. It is therefore important that the Chapter are supported in the ongoing provision of free entry to the Cathedral.
- 4.5.31 The Cathedral contains a number of small, paid for visitor experiences available, such as the Treasures of St Cuthbert's exhibition, featuring the Sanctuary Knocker and the carved coffin of St Cuthbert; the Monk's Dormitory; an audiovisual show and climbing the tower. The varying opening hours of these experiences reflect operational constraints, but are not visitor friendly and would act as

a disincentive to the group travel trade in promoting a visit to clients. The separate entry fees for each paid element of the Cathedral allows visitors to pick and choose for themselves, as do the separate leaflets and guidebooks to the various aspects of the Site. Guided tours are on offer for pre-booked tour groups and educational visits and, during the summer, for individual visitors.

4.5.32 In conclusion, the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is currently presented as two separate visitor experiences, a Cathedral and a Castle tour. Neither of these in isolation has sufficient critical mass to encourage a general leisure visitor to extend their stay in the City beyond a few hours. There appears to be no co-ordination between the timing of the Castle tours and the opening hours of the paid-for exhibitions within the Cathedral. In both cases the opening hours by time of year are complex; are reduced considerably between October and March, and are subject to change at short notice. There appears to be little cross-promotional activity between the Cathedral and the Castle and little attempt made to help visitors plan their overall trip to the WHS.

4.5.33 The Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS visitor experience is therefore a 'do it yourself' activity, focused more on fitting in with the primary uses of the Site than delivering an experience in a visitor orientated manner. Neither the Castle nor the Cathedral offers an overview to the history of the WHS and the peninsula as a whole. This is provided by the informative Bow Trusts' Durham Heritage Centre and Museum (see below). There is a strong opportunity for the Cathedral, Castle and the Durham Heritage Centre to work together to improve the visitor experience, and their understanding, of the WHS.

Additional Attractions Close to the WHS

4.5.34 There are a number of visitor attractions located close to the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS. These include the Durham Heritage Centre and the Old Fulling Mill. In addition to these key attractions, there is also a current proposal to open up the peninsula riverbank, providing an upper level and lower level walkway and restoring the icehouses and other structures that sit within the riverbanks. This is currently being undertaken through the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan and the Riverbanks Garden Project. Whilst the projects sit outside of the WHS, they present an excellent opportunity to develop packages with the WHS visitor attractions, to strengthen the appeal of a visit to the area and encourage a longer length of stay in Durham. However, as these projects are located within the sensitive setting of the WHS, it is important that they actively conserve the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.

Directions for the Future

- 4.5.35 As demonstrated at other WH Sites, there is an opportunity to benefit from visitors without impacting on the significance of the Site. To achieve this, both institutions need to develop their visitor offer within the context of a coordinated approach to visitor management. This development of the visitor offer needs to embrace visitor management, access, movement, orientation and facilities within the WHS and its environs. There is the possibility that without a more co-ordinated approach to the overall management of visitors and the promotion of the Site, the benefits of WHS status may not be realised, the visitor experience will not be improved and any growth in visitors due to activities aimed at promoting the City of Durham will be more likely to begin to impact upon the fabric, culture and Outstanding Universal Value of the Site. One of the most appropriate forms for this coordinated approach to visitor management at the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS may be the creation of a Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy. More detail about this potential approach is provided in Appendix 7.
- 4.5.36 It is important that the development of the visitor potential of the WHS is undertaken in coordination with the wider tourism initiatives being undertaken in the City and the region. The WHS Coordinating Committee needs to ensure that it coordinates its tourism related actions with the Durham Partnerships studies, the ONE regional tourism strategy and the City and County Council tourism strategies. All these strategies see the WHS as an important driver for the region's tourism, and the related socio-economic benefits that this industry can bring to the area.
- 4.5.37 Coordinating visitor management and marketing activity with other agencies will enable coordinated and targeted action that is not only more effective in its implementation but also spreads the benefits of tourism more widely. Such coordinated action also allows for economies of scale, and enables the sharing of resources and possibly even funding. In addition, the WHS Coordinating Committee needs to act as an advocate for the WHS, ensuring that the development of the region and city tourism offers do not negatively impact on the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the Site and its setting, and to ensure that the WHS receives the best benefit possible from these schemes. It is important that the needs of local people are taken into account during the development of the WHS visitor offer, and coordination with the aforementioned strategies will enable the development of this aim.
- 4.5.38 In addition to creating a more coordinated visitor offer at the WHS, there are a number of projects that may be undertaken at the Site to enhance the visitor experience. The University is exploring the possibility for developing the visitor experience through the long-term redevelopment of parts of the University Library on Palace Green. The central location of the Library may allow the space to provide

a coordinating function for visitors to the WHS, providing information about both the Cathedral and Castle and the attractions, resources, tours and events that they offer, and enabling visitors to make more informed decisions about their overall WHS experience.

- 4.5.39 Choral Evensong and evening concerts presented by the Cathedral are an ideal opportunity to extend visitors' length of stay at the WHS and encourage an overnight visit in Durham. Coordinated marketing of these events with information about accommodation and other Durham attractions could encourage more staying visitors in the area. Recent research conducted by Opinion Research Business on behalf of the Church of England and English Heritage on public attitudes to church buildings and Cathedrals, indicated that 86 percent of British adults had visited a church or place of worship during the past year. One in five respondents had attended a concert or theatrical performance in their place of worship during the past year. This therefore indicates that there is a potential market for this type of activity.
- 4.5.40 With a co-ordinated approach ensuring the enhancement of the existing visitor experience and the possibility of linking to further complementary visitor experiences within or nearby to the WHS, there is the opportunity to build a strong identity for the WHS, focused on the history of Durham and the role of the University and the Cathedral within this. Links to associated regional sites such as Finchdale, Jarrow and Monkwearmouth and Lindisfarne and associated medieval buildings within the City, including Keping, Elvethall manor and Beaurepaire, could also be sought. There is the potential to build broader partnerships to deliver customer focused visitor support, building on work such as Destination Durham, to develop the unique Durham Heritage Experience.
- 4.5.41 The WHS Coordinating Committee and WHS stakeholders will need to work together to ensure that the focus of future development aimed at growing tourist revenues takes into account the visitor's perspective, addressing the current gaps in provision and support for visitors. The development of a strong identity for the WHS and the communication of this to potential visitors will also be more powerful than individual site-by-site marketing. However, the current low market volumes indicate that a policy of encouraging visitors to stay longer in Durham, and hence spend more, is more likely to be successful in the shorter term than looking to drive significant volume growth

Conserving the WHS and its Outstanding Universal Value

- 4.5.42 Central to this consideration of tourism at the WHS is the acknowledgement that tourism is not the primary purpose of the Site's owners. Whilst tourism provides an important financial support for the WHS, the City and the region, enabling the funding of essential conservation works, the WHS Management Plan needs to prioritise the conservation of the WHS and its Outstanding Universal Value, over and above the needs of the contemporary tourism experience. Tourism at the WHS needs

to be carefully managed to ensure that the built fabric, primary uses, character, Outstanding Universal Value and broader significance of the Site and its setting are conserved for future generations.

4.5.43 The conservation of the WHS, its Outstanding Universal Value, its related significances and its setting can be achieved through the regular monitoring of the impacts of tourism at the WHS and through the creation of a coordinated, integrated and sustainable approach to tourism across the WHS. Potential negative impacts of tourism could include:

- Overcrowding and visitor related noise disrupting the tranquillity of the WHS as a whole and the Cathedral in particular;
- Erosion of the built fabric by visitors;
- Disruption to the use of the Cathedral as a place of worship and the University as a place of learning;
- Littering and other misuse of the Site by visitors.

4.5.44 Some of these issues are already monitored through the Site's quinquennial surveys. Any change to this status quo would be identified during the quinquennial architectural survey of the Cathedral. However, other issues, such as the issues of tranquillity, character and primary uses, are not currently regularly monitored in this way. Consideration needs to be given to implementing regular monitoring of these issues, so that problems are identified and addressed whilst they are still in their nascence.

4.5.45 It is also the case, that the development of the City's and region's tourism offer, needs to be undertaken with sensitivity to the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS, and with regard for the conservation of the Site and its setting.

Objective 19: Continue to develop a co-ordinated, high quality sustainable visitor experience at the WHS, which does not impact negatively on the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Conduct primary market research to determine the profile of current visitors and patterns of visitation to the WHS;
- Support the continued provision of free access for all to the Cathedral;
- Consider the preparation and implementation of a WHS-wide Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy;
- Improve visitor management, access, movement, orientation and facilities within the WHS and its environs;

- Support the plans of the WHS owners to develop their visitor offer, ensuring that these are in keeping with the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS;
- Link the WHS with tourism work being conducted by the Durham Partnership, ONE and the County and City Councils;
- Optimise visitor numbers to the WHS, ensuring that the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances, character and setting of the WHS are not adversely affected;
- Develop monitoring procedures to regularly assess the impact of visitors on the WHS;
- Ensure that existing and future events and attractions within the WHS and its setting conserve and promote the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.

Objective 20: Maximise the benefits brought to the region by the sustainable and appropriate use of the WHS as a visitor attraction and maximise the benefit to the WHS of the local and regional development of Durham's tourism offer.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Enhance links to local attractions (in the setting of the WHS and in the City as a whole), to develop a stronger Durham Heritage visitor experience, and to link this experience to the broader Durham leisure experience;
- Liaise with partners to ensure that the greatest opportunities and benefits are derived for the WHS in relation to new tourism initiatives, such as the Durham Partnership studies;
- Work with partners to integrate the WHS within local and regional tourism strategies, to ensure that the regional benefits of the WHS as a tourism driver are maximised.

4.6 Theme 4: Enhancing Understanding of the Site

Education and Interpretation

4.6.1 If the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its Outstanding Universal Value are to be understood, valued and appreciated, and the conservation and management of the Site further supported by local people and visitors, then the WHS must be promoted to a wide audience. The key tools for achieving this are interpretation and education. The site is already well equipped with education and interpretation facilities, however there are some key ways in which this provision could be improved.

4.6.2 Under the World Heritage Convention, to which the UK government is a signatory, it is an obligation of the State Parties to *"endeavour by all appropriate means, and in particular by educational and*

information programmes, to strengthen appreciation and respect by their peoples of the cultural and natural heritage defined in Articles 1 and 2 of the Convention' (UNESCO 1972).

4.6.3 To support the State Parties in the educational and information programmes outlined in the Convention, the World Heritage Centre and UNESCO's Associated Schools Project launched the Young People's World Heritage Education Project (WHEP) in 1994. The three main objectives of the project were:

- To encourage young people to become involved in heritage conservation on a local as well as a global level;
- To promote awareness among young people of the importance of our common World Heritage and of the UNESCO World Heritage Convention;
- To develop effective educational approaches and materials by creating a new synergy among educators and heritage conservation experts in order to introduce World Heritage Education into the curricula of secondary schools in all parts of the world.

4.6.4 To aid the achievement of these goals, a World Heritage Education Kit was produced, containing educational resources and project ideas for teachers. This kit would provide a useful resource for school teachers within Durham, and also for the further development of education at the Site. In addition to raising awareness of this kit amongst local schools, closer links between the WHS and local schools could be sought. At a national level the English National Curriculum (for children up to the age of 16) currently does not draw on the World Heritage Education Kit; does not specifically use World Heritage as a concept, nor draws on or elucidates World Heritage principles. This lack of overt links between World Heritage and the National Curriculum is a key issue for formal education at WH Sites, and could be considered to be a lost opportunity for fulfilling the UK government's obligations under the World Heritage Convention.

4.6.5 Within the Site the key educational providers are the Cathedral and the University, and their provision is supplemented by the Durham Heritage Centre and Museum and the Old Fulling Mill Museum of Archaeology, both located outside the Site. Though the Cathedral and the University's Old Fulling Mill do work together to provide formal education for schools, in the main, education provision at the Site is not co-ordinated. Consideration needs to be given to integrating education at the WHS for both children and adults into a much more easily accessible coordinated package, and to take advantage of outlets such as the Cathedral Bus, local libraries and the Tourism Information Centre as outlets for educational information about the WHS. Additional opportunities for coordinated working exist between the WHS and the other WH Sites and potential WH Sites within the North-East region. Thus, there are strong potentials for educational links and opportunities for joint educational working between

Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS, Hadrian's Wall WHS, and the tentative Site at Monkwearmouth and Jarrow.

Education and Interpretation at the Cathedral

- 4.6.6 The Cathedral has an Education Officer and a dedicated educational facility through which educational visits for school groups are run. There are Resource Packs aimed at Key Stages 1-3 (5-14 years old) and photographic packs covering a number of themes. The Chapter needs to be encouraged in its development of this growing educational resource. The Cathedral Friends provide an important forum for local informal adult education, providing regular lectures about aspects of the Cathedral and its history. This resource is only available to members of the Friends, though this membership is large, including over 3000 members.
- 4.6.7 The Cathedral has some on-site interpretation provision, including an audio-visual display; exhibitions in the Monks' Dormitory and the "Treasures of St Cuthbert" exhibition. There are opportunities for improved presentation at the Cathedral: for example, the Anglo-Saxon carved stones currently housed in the Monks' Dormitory could potentially be presented in a new way in order to provide a unique insight into Anglo-Saxon society and culture and provide an important resource for formal and informal education. Consideration could also be given to occasionally providing access to the Cathedral's non-public collections, as part of a wider educational programme.
- 4.6.8 Guided tours for groups are an important part of the Cathedral's interpretation strategy, providing a personal touch to exploration of the Cathedral and its history and enabling the tours to be matched to the age, knowledge and ability of the group. Individuals and groups can also explore the Cathedral at their own leisure. The guides and stewards provide an important source of information about the Cathedral for visitors and the Chapter should be encouraged in their work to provide better resources for these important voluntary front-line staff.
- 4.6.9 There are also areas of the Cathedral that are usually closed to the public, and collections that the public do not usually see. These could provide some scope for expansion of educational provision at the Site for all visitors, perhaps through limited and strictly controlled access to these resources at particular times of the year or as an annual event.
- 4.6.10 The Chorister School (see Section 4.5) is an essential component of the package of formal education provided at the Site, and it is important that the School continues to be supported and encouraged. There is the potential for the School to take more advantage of its location within the WHS, and to use

the World Heritage Convention, the Outstanding Universal Value and the related significances of the Site in its teaching.

Education and Interpretation at the Castle

- 4.6.11 The Castle does not currently have specific educational provision, and there is a willingness to address this gap. This new educational provision should be encouraged to draw on the WHS and its values and significances, and on WHS values and links. Interpretation at the Castle is currently dependent on the student guides who conduct the public tours, which are the means through which all visitors can experience the building. As with the Cathedral, the guided tours should allow interpretation provision to be matched to the age, knowledge and ability of the group, and visitors appear to be quite happy with the service. Whilst the colourful individualistic histories of the guides are interesting for the visitor, it is important that these continue to be updated through regular training and updating. Future plans for the Castle may include the provision of more formal interpretation within a new Visitors' Centre, and the Castle needs to be encouraged with this development, which again needs to draw on the WHS and its Outstanding Universal Value, related significances and World Heritage values. Opportunities for working with other local groups, such as Durham City Arts, to create innovative ways of exploring the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site could be sought.
- 4.6.12 With the exception of the students employed as guides, the students resident at University College are not directly educated in the history and values of the WHS and of World Heritage in general. More targeted awareness-raising activity could probably be undertaken for this group.

Education and Interpretation at the University Library

- 4.6.13 The University Library has an excellent record of supporting access to heritage resources and information for life-long learners. Their collections are in the main grounded in the locality and the region, and attract interest from a wide-range of individuals, in addition to academic researchers. The burgeoning interest in family history is well supported by the Library through access to the Diocesan Records held in their care, which contain a wealth of information to support genealogical study (birth, marriage, death records, wills etc). The Library also has a rich collection of printed, archival and pictorial materials for the study of local history.
- 4.6.14 However, the full educational potential of the University Library for non-students and for visitors to the WHS is as yet unfulfilled. The recent appointment of an Education Outreach Officer for the Library is an important step towards addressing this gap. This post is initially funded by the HLF with the intention of making the archive collections at Palace Green accessible to school audiences and to life-

long learners. Part of the project will create online learning packages, but there is the intention to supplement this provision with visits to the library to see original materials.

Education and Interpretation at the Old Fulling Mill Museum of Archaeology

- 4.6.15 Though the Old Fulling Mill is outside the boundaries of the WHS and does not actively teach about the WHS, its Outstanding Universal Value and related significances, it currently plays an important role in the provision of education at the Site. This building is set on the peninsula riverbanks in an old mill and houses the University's Museum of Archaeology. The Museum has its own Education Officer and runs educational visits both independently and in partnership with the Cathedral. This formal educational provision focuses on Key Stage 2 (7-11 year olds). The Old Fulling Mill Museum is a Registered Museum. It is open to casual visitors, providing informal education about the development of Durham through temporary and permanent exhibitions. There has in the past been debate about relocating the Museum to the peninsula plateau, and consideration could be given to re-evaluating this proposal. If the museum were to move it would be important to ensure that the Archaeological Museum and the Durham Heritage Centre complement each other rather than competing or overlapping.

Education and Interpretation at the Durham Heritage Centre

- 4.6.16 The Durham Heritage Centre, run by the Bow Trust, is a key educational provider, located just outside the WHS. The Heritage Centre is housed in the redundant church of St Mary-le-Bow and presents the history of Durham through exhibitions and artefacts and through National Curriculum work with schools. This centre provides an important facility for public appreciation of the development of Durham and its location within the wider historic landscape. The location of the Heritage Centre and its highly relevant educational remit means that it is well placed to potentially be part of a broader WHS education package. The Heritage Centre is a Registered Museum and is open from April to October. There may be scope to explore with the BowTrust the possibility of providing longer opening hours at the Durham Heritage Centre. This may be particularly effective within the context of a coordinated approach to education at the Site.

Community Education and Life-Long Learning

- 4.6.17 Across the WHS there is an ever-increasing need to provide facilitated access to the heritage resource, and to information about the resource for life-long learners. There is a great potential for educational and interpretational works that relate not only to the WHS, but also place it within the context of the entire peninsula, the broader City and the wider historic landscape. This process could include the production of promotional information that outlines where relevant archives are held, how to

access them, the records available and which places can be visited. The work of Durham County Council's archaeological outreach team could be combined with the resources of the Cathedral and the University, particularly the Department of Archaeology, and with City of Durham Council, who organise the annual Heritage Open Days, to create a comprehensive, easily accessible, and informative programme.

4.6.18 In addition to education and interpretation, community outreach is an important aspect of any site-based educational programme. Community outreach related to the WHS currently takes three main forms, and there is the potential for increasing all of these aspects:

- The annual Heritage Open Days undertaken by the City of Durham Council as part of the national scheme organised by the Civic Trust;
- The provision of access to the University Library collections;
- The important role played by the voluntary staff employed at the Cathedral.

4.6.19 Community education at the site could be further expanded through the exploration of innovative routes to education, including using events and exhibitions to celebrate the global diversity enshrined in the World Heritage List; to use spaces within the WHS for exhibitions of local community heritage, art and culture; and to promote the historic landscape of Durham as an entity in its own right, extending out from the WHS that lies at its core. The latter could include a wide variety of events, including walking tours, seminars, media publicity and community art programmes.

Volunteers

4.6.20 The large voluntary workforce is not only directly engaged with the Cathedral, its work and conservation, but also act as ambassadors, raising awareness of the Cathedral within their communities. The voluntary guides and stewards are well informed about the Cathedral, with a formal programme of education included within their training. This training constitutes an important source of adult education in its own right, and needs to continue to be supported. Along with the Christian heritage of the Site, the Friends could also be encouraged to explore the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the Site in their series of lectures and training events.

Objective 21: Continue to support and enhance the high quality educational provision at the WHS in a manner that is inclusive and accessible to all.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Raise awareness of the World Heritage Education Kit as a teaching aid for local schools, and for schools using the WHS;
- Seek greater links between the WHS and local schools, and between local schools and World Heritage in general;
- Examine ways to coordinate and strengthen educational provision at the Site, through shared skills, knowledge, promotion and resources;
- Seek opportunities to promote the WHS, its Outstanding Universal Value, its related significances and World Heritage values to local people and to visitors, through such outlets as the Cathedral Bus, the local libraries and the Tourism Information Centre;
- Seek links with Hadrian's Wall WHS and with the Monkwearmouth and Jarrow tentative Site to promote interaction between the resident communities, such as joint art projects, school visits and events;
- Continue to support and expand the educational provision at the Cathedral, including the work of the Cathedral Education Officer and the Cathedral and Education and Resources Centre;
- Continue to support The Chorister School in their provision of educational excellence at the WHS;
- Create new provision for educational groups at the Castle;
- Explore how the skills of the University could be combined with those of Durham City Arts to create community art projects to celebrate the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS;
- Create WHS awareness-raising activities amongst the students of the Castle and the University;
- Support the ongoing development of the University Library as an educational resource that is accessible to all;
- Support and expand educational links between the Old Fulling Mill and the WHS;
- Encourage and seek to enable longer opening hours at the Durham Heritage Centre and Museum;
- Continue to expand the programme of annual Heritage Open Days within the WHS;
- Seek to celebrate global diversity through events and exhibitions;
- Examine using the spaces housed within the WHS for exhibitions of local community heritage, art and culture;
- Seek opportunities to promote an understanding of the development of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its relationship with its own historic landscape;
- Continue to support the work of the Cathedral Friends and of the volunteers employed at the Site;
- Continue to support the educational work of the Cathedral Friends, and encourage them to continue to explore the Christian heritage, Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS in their programme of lectures.

Research

4.6.21 There are four main aspects to research at the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS:

- Understanding is used at the Site as the foundation for all conservation and management processes. It is understood by the Site managers that a firm foundation of understanding is necessary for the formulation of informed decisions about priorities and actions. As a matter of course, best practice dictates that research into, and understanding of, the resource precedes all physical interventions at the Site;
- Research and understanding are necessary to ensure that the Site's Outstanding Universal Value and its related significances are appropriately conserved;
- Research at the Site needs to be integrated and its results effectively disseminated;
- Research is essential for the development of appropriate educational and interpretational packages.

4.6.22 Current research projects at the Site include:

- Supervised research projects at the University as part of undergraduate and postgraduate courses;
- Academic research undertaken by academic staff;
- Research undertaken by the Cathedral Guides as part of their training;
- Targeted research undertaken by conservation professionals to precede intervention, including by the Cathedral's Archaeologist, and the Cathedral's and Castle's architects;
- Longer-term systematic research by the Cathedral's Archaeologist;
- Research undertaken by the City and County councils, such as by the County Archaeologist;
- Private research conducted by individuals;
- The cataloguing of the Cathedral's assets, including archives and artefacts;
- Targeted research undertaken as part of specific projects, such as the Castle HLF bid and the Riverbank gardens project.

4.6.23 As the above list shows, as the WHS includes a University and a high profile Cathedral, the Site is well served by research projects. Both institutions have specialised members of staff, such as the Cathedral's resident archaeologist, who can apply their specialist skills to the management of the Site. They also both have long-term members of staff who have built up considerable bodies of knowledge about the Site, its history, components and significance. It is important that these individual stores of valuable, and possibly unique, knowledge about the Site held in the memories of members of staff are recorded, perhaps through an oral history project run by the University's history department.

- 4.6.24 Research across the WHS as a whole is not coordinated, and the outputs of the various research projects are not integrated. Whilst there are internal strategies for deciding priorities, there are no such WHS-wide strategies for channelling research. In addition, whilst some areas of the Site are relatively well-understood, such as the Norman Cathedral, other areas are not so well-understood and would benefit from targeted research programmes. Of particular note is the Cathedral College, where reactive research has preceded intervention, but where this research has only recently been coordinated and developed into a comprehensive understanding of the built heritage of the College (see Section 4.4.5).
- 4.6.25 The Cathedral's resident archaeologist manages an extensive archive, and records all new knowledge and activities within the Site within this archive, however such a disciplined recording process is not applied across the whole of the Site. There are several archives of information that relate to the WHS, and access to these is variable (see also Section 4.4.25).
- 4.6.26 The issues outlined above could be resolved through the creation of a WHS Research Strategy. This Research Strategy would be designed to nest within the recent English Heritage funded North East Regional Research Framework, whose development is currently being managed by Durham County Council and the University of Durham. The Strategy would need to be developed through consultation with the WHS Coordination Committee members and with other stakeholders of the Site, and would seek to develop close links with such voluntary groups as the Cathedral Friends. The WHS Research Strategy would also facilitate connections with such related projects as the new Victoria County History of the County of Durham, which is being developed in conjunction with the University of Durham.
- 4.6.27 The WHS Research Strategy would highlight priorities for research across the WHS, and would provide a framework for the coordination of research across the Site. Such priorities would probably include research into the geological stability of the peninsula (see Section 4.5); the Cathedral College Research Project, and an oral history project to document the knowledge of key individuals about the WHS. The Research Strategy would also include a project to list and publicise all the archive holdings that relate to the WHS, along with information about access and opening times, and to create information-sharing protocols with the statutory archive at the County Sites and Monuments Record, as well as with the national repository at the National Monuments Record. This project would also seek to explore the viability of copying all key archival sources to a readily accessible website or digital library on CD-Rom, which would be available to the public as well as to professionals working at the Site. This would incorporate a single digital bibliographic catalogue for the WHS.

4.6.28 The WHS Research Strategy would seek to put in place structures for disseminating and publishing research about the Site and its components, and would agree a programme for this process. This dissemination could include lecture and seminar series and exhibitions at the WHS, and publication in journals and books. Potential future research projects at the WHS include:

- A WHS bibliography;
- Research into the geology and geological stability of the peninsula;
- The creation of oral history projects to capture the unrecorded knowledge of long-term staff and residents of the Cathedral and Castle;
- A survey to establish the natural ground depth across the peninsula, to assess the varying depths of archaeological deposits;
- A survey of the locations and contents of archives relating to the Site, and the potential for copying key records to a readily accessible website or to a digital library on CD-Rom, with a single digital catalogue;
- The survey, recording and analysis of the history of the buildings and gardens within the Cathedral College, the Castle and Palace Green;
- Research into the archaeology of the early local pottery and glass industries, to aid archaeological understanding of the post-conquest archaeology of the Site;
- Research into the location and form of the Saxon monastery, church and peninsula landscape and the examination of the beginnings of the activities of the pre-Conquest Community of St Cuthbert on the peninsula;
- Research into the use of the peninsula prior to the arrival of the Community of St Cuthbert.

Objective 22: Support high quality research that enhances the understanding and management of the WHS.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Support the Cathedral's ongoing archaeological research programme;
- Create and implement a WHS Research Strategy;
- Create an oral history project to document the extensive knowledge about the WHS held in the memories of long-serving staff;
- Through the Research Strategy explore the potential for a single digital catalogue and digital archive of key records relating to the WHS, made available on an accessible website or CD-Rom;
- Explore the possibility of linking the Cathedral's archaeological archive with the statutory repository of the County Sites and Monuments Record (see Objective 11);
- Agree a programme for disseminating and publishing research.

4.7 Theme 5: Improving Access and Sustainable Transport

Non-vehicular Access to the WHS

4.7.1 Since 2000, Durham County Council has had a policy of actively discouraging vehicular access to the peninsula through the imposition of a congestion charge for all vehicles leaving the peninsula between the hours of 10am to 4pm. Because of this policy, and for reasons of sustainability, social inclusion, reduction of pollution and the conservation of the historic environment, non-vehicular modes of access to the WHS are of prime importance for both the City and the WHS. These non-vehicular modes of access (walking and cycling) need to cater for the needs of a variety of user groups, including:

- School children;
- University and Cathedral staff and volunteers;
- Visitors;
- Students;
- Residents;
- Cathedral congregations; and
- Other Site users.

4.7.2 Pedestrian activity in the City is concentrated around the Market Place and Silver Street areas. In addition to this activity there are heavy flows of students between the colleges and Science Centre (South Road) and Old Elvet (Church Street, New Elvet). The main pedestrian and cycle routes into the WHS is Saddler Street. Elvet Bridge, Silver Street and Prebends Bridge are also popular routes for pedestrians, along which cyclists are not allowed.

4.7.3 The use of cycles in the City is generally low despite the fact that Durham is a University town. This may be explained partly by the hilliness and partly by the lack of cycle facilities. Maximum cycle flows observed in 1997 were seldom more than 20 per hour in one direction. The County Durham Cycling Strategy 2001-2006 is a key method of addressing this lack of interest in cycling, and aims: *"To have a network of routes and facilities throughout the County which enable cycling to be a safe, attractive and enjoyable mode of transport, where people are encouraged to cycle for commuting, travelling to school, shopping and recreational purposes"*. This strategy identifies a number of obstacles to the use of cycles within the County, including:

- Lack of dedicated facilities;
- High volume of motorised traffic;
- Fear for personal safety;
- Local climate and topography; and
- Poor condition of roads.

4.7.4 The issue of cycling on the peninsula riverbanks is an important issue for non-vehicular access to and from the WHS. There is currently no legal right for any member of the public to cycle on any of the riverbank paths that surround the peninsula: there are no public bridleways and no cycle tracks and any cycling that does occur is effectively without the permission of the landowners. This lack of vehicular traffic on the riverbanks makes a direct contribution to the tranquillity and peace of the riverbanks, where pedestrians set the pace of movement, and the conservation of this atmosphere needs to be a key consideration of the WHS Management Plan. The Riverbanks Management Plan considers this issue in detail, analysing the concerns about accidents between cyclists and other groups of users; the physical restrictions on space at certain key locations; the perceived difficulties in restricting cycling to certain routes without significantly altering the character of the riverbanks. The Plan provides an objective to "*Explore ways to allow for controlled cycle access to defined parts of the riverbanks footpath system*". Concerns for the safety and welfare of pedestrians, and potential conflicts between pedestrians and cyclists are at the heart of the Riverbanks Management Plan's approach to this issue.

4.7.5 Dramatic improvements in the general environment for pedestrians at and near the WHS have recently been achieved through the City's congestion charging and through the provision of new pedestrian bridges over roads. In many ways conditions for both walking and cycling in the vicinity of the WHS and within it are now good, with problems tending to lie further away on the approaches to the WHS. Many of the problems relate to crossing busy roads, particularly at roundabouts and to the lack of continuity of provision, particularly of cycle routes. In order to resolve these issues there is a need to implement further City-wide improvements in the provision for both pedestrians and cyclists, perhaps through the creation of a city-wide cycling and pedestrian strategy. Care needs to be taken during the implementation of this strategy that any changes within the WHS and its setting respect and conserve the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site and its setting. Within the WHS the dominant use of the car for The Chorister School 'school run' is an important issue, and there may be scope for exploring the provision of 'safe routes to school' for cycling and walking at the WHS.

Objective 23: Improve access to the WHS for non-vehicular users, and promote pedestrian and cycle modes of transport.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Support the implementation of the County Durham Cycling Strategy;
- Encourage the implementation of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan review of cycle access, and ensure that any physical improvement respect the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS, subject to proper safeguards for safety on the riverbanks;
- Encourage the implementation of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan pedestrian access improvements, and ensure that these respect the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting;
- Encourage the provision of 'safe routes to school' within the WHS.

Public Transport

- 4.7.6 The public transport network (currently trains and buses) is important for residents and visitors from both within and outside of the City, and is the backbone of a sustainable approach to access to the WHS.

Trains

- 4.7.7 Durham is well-located on the east coast mainline, and the rail network provides an important gateway to the City and the WHS. Durham is served by four train-operating companies (GNER to London King's Cross and Scotland; Regional Railways connecting Newcastle and Saltburn; Trans Pennine Express between Newcastle and Liverpool; Virgin cross-country services). These companies provide Durham with about 140 trains per day. Average journey times to Newcastle, Sunderland and Darlington from Durham are 19, 40 and 18 minutes. The rail station has two car parks with a typical occupancy of close to 100%.
- 4.7.8 There are two main issues with the provision of railway services at Durham in regard to the visitor experience of the WHS. These issues concern access from the station to the WHS, and the provision of facilities and information at the station. The station has recently undergone two phases of improvements: the first phase has improved the north-bound facilities and the second phase improved the south-bound facilities. Previously, the lack of an enclosed station café that remains open in the early evening was a serious issue, but following the phased developments, the role of the station as a gateway to the City (including the provision of tourism information at the station) has been vastly improved. It is important that the WHS Management Plan supports the development of visitor information about the WHS on both platforms of the station.

Buses

- 4.7.9 The City bus station is located on North Road and there are also a number of centrally located bus stops on North Road, along the through road and at Old Elvet. Most of the City's suburbs have direct bus services to the town centre with typical frequencies ranging from 4 to 10 buses per hour. The largest movements of bus passengers are in the northern and eastern corridors of the City. Bus services radiate in all directions from the bus station so it is quite well located and remains very busy at peak times. It is understood not to cater for coaches because of the shortage of space. The bus services from the station and bus stops and their financial viability are due to be examined as part of the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study. In addition to the services provided at the bus station, key issues are similar to those faced by the railway station: the provision of facilities and access to the City centre and WHS.

Links Between the WHS and the Train and Bus Stations

- 4.7.10 Both the bus and railway station would benefit from an assessment of the pedestrian route from these facilities to the City centre and WHS. Due to the hilly topography of the town there is an inherent difficulty of getting from the high level Durham train station down through the town and up again to the WHS and the pedestrian route from the train station is difficult to negotiate: the route is steep, there are challenging road crossings, though the new pedestrian bridge helps alleviate some of these. A solution is to further improve the pedestrian routes from both stations, with coordinated improvements to road junctions and the provision of a clear waymarked trail. This potential could be explored as part of the Durham Partnership studies.
- 4.7.11 Both the railway station and the bus station are served by the Cathedral Bus. This Cathedral Bus is operated by the Council at a loss, as part of the City's integrated transport system. The buses are designed to be easy access, 'kneeling' to enable those with access difficulties, wheelchairs and pushchairs. The main issue with the Cathedral Bus is that it only arrives at each station every 20 minutes during the day, though this increases to every 15 minutes between 7.55 and 9.10 am. Because the distance is short, people are unwilling to wait for a 20 minute service which they may expect to be unreliable. This is a particular problem for the train station where they can see where they are trying to get to from the station and the walk downhill is tempting, though the walk uphill to the WHS and then back to the station is less so. Consideration needs to be given to increasing the frequency of the Cathedral Bus service, at least during the peak visitor season, and to increased promotion of the service.

4.7.12 In addition to improvements to pedestrian access and the Cathedral Bus, both the railway station and the bus station could potentially benefit from an alternative approach to improving access to the WHS. Potential options are to be assessed as part of the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study, and it is important that any implemented changes to access arrangements conserve the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS. In the medium term the management of the WHS would benefit from a greater understanding of the transport modes used by people to access the WHS. This would enable more targeted provision of transport services, and the identification and targeted improvement of key gateways, such as the Park and Ride car parks and the bus and railway stations.

Objective 24: Improve access between the bus and rail stations and the WHS, and encourage improvements to the facilities and information available at the stations.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Encourage the improvement of the facilities and visitor information available at the bus and train stations, including the second phase of the railway station improvements;
- Explore the provision of further transport services between the stations and the WHS as part of the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study;
- Support the continued development and provision of the Cathedral Bus service, including the further development of easily accessible information about the service, and the promotion of the Bus as a key route to the WHS;
- Ensure that any recommendations contained within the Durham Accessibility study conserve the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.

Coaches and Coach Tours

4.7.13 Coaches are a significant means through which visitors access the City and the WHS. Currently the conditions for access to the WHS by coach are inconvenient both for coaches operating special excursions to Durham alone and for those running to tighter schedules and offering a visit to Durham as part of a longer tour. Coaches currently drop their passengers on Walkergate, adjacent to the Market Place and Market Hall. When passengers rejoin their coach they are directed to the Coach Park on The Sands, along Freemans Place. Previously, coach passengers were required to walk up to the Castle and Cathedral via Saddler Street. This was a pleasant, but quite lengthy walk. However, a regular minibus service is now in place between the coach park, Palace Green and the market place.

4.7.14 Over the past decade several options for resolving the important issue of coach pick-up and drop-off locations have been explored. These are under review again in the current Durham Partnership Accessibility Study, which will need to consider carefully the new perspective to the issue provided by

the Millennium City and Walkergate developments. Whichever solutions are decided upon by The Durham Partnership's Study, it is of vital importance that the implementation and management of these does not negatively impact on the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS. In addition to improving facilities for coaches and coach parties, it is also important to ensure that coach operators have up to date information about Durham, and the WHS, in order to encourage them to come to the City and the WHS and to better enable them to provide a smooth service for their customers. There may be some scope for working with other tourism information providers, such as the County Council, to create this service. This issue needs to be considered as part of the proposed WHS Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy (see Appendix 7).

Objective 25: Improve the facilities and experience for coach parties to the WHS in a way that does not impact upon the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS and its setting.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Ensure that the proposals contained within the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study respect the Outstanding Universal Values and related significances of the WHS and its setting;
- Support the implementation of appropriate solutions presented by the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study;
- Ensure that coach operators are supplied with information about the WHS and its visitor facilities.

Cars and Car Parking

Car Traffic in Durham and the WHS

- 4.7.15 About 69% of households in Durham City own one or more cars, a figure close to the national average but higher than in the surrounding areas. Durham City (post code DH1) attracts nearly half its work trips from outside the wider City of Durham boundary. Well over half of those employees who live in Durham City also work there. Many of those who work in the City drive their cars to work, and car travel is one of the main means through which visitors access the City and the WHS. In addition to being such a popular mode of transport, private car use also creates particular issues for the City and for the WHS.
- 4.7.16 Durham has an unusual traffic arrangement in that its 'by-pass' essentially passes right through the urban area and close to the WHS, crossing the River Wear on the Millburngate Bridge. The traffic flows on this bridge are comparable to those on the A1(M). This 'by-pass' performed the much-needed function of diverting traffic away from the Market Place, though its design has had the unfortunate effect of severing the Claypath, which previously formed one of the historic routes to the peninsula.

The diversion of traffic away from the Market Place has most recently enabled the implementation of the Congestion Charging system on the peninsula, and the severance of the Claypath is one of the issues being addressed by the Durham Visioning project.

- 4.7.17 Since its introduction in 2000, the Congestion Charge (the first in the UK), has significantly decreased vehicular use of the WHS during the hours of the charge (10am to 4pm), with traffic levels in Saddler Street (near to the WHS) being at 15% of their pre-Charge levels during the hours of the charge. During Congestion Charge hours there are four main groups who drive motorised vehicles through the peninsula and into the WHS: residents; University and Cathedral staff and volunteers; visitors to the Cathedral or University; and deliveries. Whilst some users, such as the parents picking up their children from school, tend to be transient, several of these user groups use Palace Green as a car park. Outside of Congestion Charge hours the numbers of user groups entering the WHS by car increases, and this leads to late night driving of fast cars around Palace Green.

Car Parking in Durham and the WHS

- 4.7.18 As a result of the implementation of the recommendations contained in the 1997 Durham City Travel study, the WHS is now surrounded by a controlled parking zone (CPZ), which appears to be working well. The introduction of the CPZ has generally improved the setting of the WHS by 'tidying up' on-street parking. Indeed, whilst the setting of the WHS at the heart of a modern historic City is important to its appreciation, a large part of this modern use of the City is the generation of traffic, which can have a dramatic impact on the setting of the WHS. Significant improvements in the traffic management of Durham City, and the setting of the WHS, have taken place in the past 5 years, with other improvements yet to be implemented.
- 4.7.19 Within the WHS, parking in the Cathedral College is managed by the Cathedral, and is not for use by the public. Public parking is available on Palace Green, and is managed by the University. During weekdays car parking is actively moderated by the University and a parking fee is charged; during the evenings and weekends there is no moderation of parking and there is no parking fee. Users of the car parking facility on Palace Green include:
- Worshippers at the Cathedral;
 - Staff of the University, the independent Colleges, the Cathedral and the Bow Trust;
 - Visitors to the WHS;
 - Visitors to events and concerts at the Cathedral and Castle; and
 - Users of nearby facilities that are located outside of the boundary of the WHS, such as the Alington House Community Centre.

Perceived Issues

4.7.20 There are several perceived issues that have been raised in relation to the use of the WHS by cars and car parking. These include:

- The moderated parking on Palace Green during the day has been observed to sometimes have a detrimental effect on the visual amenity and the peacefulness of the WHS.
- The unmediated parking that takes place on Palace Green during the evenings, particularly when there are evening events at the Cathedral or Castle and parking space is in high demand has been observed on occasion to block access across Palace Green for emergency vehicles.
- The convoy of cars driving into the WHS to the Chorister's School at the start and end of the school day affects the 'sense of place' of the WHS and potentially causes a safety risk on the narrow approaches to the WHS, with conflict between pedestrians and car users.
- Outside of the Congestion Charge hours (10am to 4pm) the use of Palace Green as a turning circle for cars visiting the City centre, and as a night-time race track by the local fast car fraternity also causes significant issues: the latter causes distress to residents; creates serious safety issues for pedestrian users of Palace Green and could potentially cause physical damage to the fabric of the WHS. The ambience and 'sense of place' of the WHS at night is severely damaged by this activity.

Directions for the Future

4.7.21 The perceived issues highlighted above require formal assessment over an extended period of time, through the monitoring of car parking and car use at the WHS. This assessment would ascertain the true impacts of these perceived issues. If necessary, this assessment could then be used as the basis for exploring practical solutions to the issues raised. In addition, it is also important that contact with the County Durham & Darlington Fire and Rescue Service (CDDFRS) is maintained to discuss any potential issues they may face gaining access for emergency vehicles during busy times.

4.7.22 If the perceived issues outlined above are proved to be real, any potential solutions would need to be sought in consultation with partners, users and other stakeholders. Any exploration of car use and car parking within the WHS should take into account the needs of essential user groups, including:

- Residents;
- Disabled and less abled people;
- Worshippers at the Cathedral;
- The parents of school children at The Chorister School;

- Staff;
- Volunteers; and
- Deliveries for the University, Cathedral, independent Colleges and others.

4.7.23 In addition to car use within the WHS, there are also potential issues relating to the proposed expansion of the provision of Park and Ride facilities at Durham. It is important to ensure that this proposed Park and Ride expansion does not negatively impact on the setting of the WHS. It is also important for visitors who use the Park and Ride system (in its current state or as an expanded system) to have access to attractive and accessible orientation information about the WHS and the City at the car parks.

Objective 26: Monitor and assess car use within the WHS.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Support the continuing implementation of the Congestion Charge and the Controlled Parking Zone around the WHS, ensuring that their implementation respects the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting;
- Instigate an assessment of car use and car parking within the WHS, to identify key issues;
- Contact CDDFRS to discuss any issues they may face with gaining access to the buildings around Palace Green when the Green is used for car parking;
- Ensure that the implementation of the County Council's expansion of the Park and Ride system does not impact on the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting;
- Ensure that orientation material is provided at the Park and Ride car parks, encouraging visitors to visit the WHS.

Access within the WHS

4.7.24 Access within the WHS is a key consideration for the management of the WHS. This consideration of access needs to include an assessment of the following:

- ***Physical and Sensory barriers*** - That may prevent or limit access for a range of individuals including people with limited mobility; people in wheelchairs; people with young children; old people; people who have visual or hearing impairments.
- ***Intellectual barriers*** - That may prevent or limit access for children, people with special needs or people with limited background knowledge of a heritage resource.

- ***Social and cultural barriers*** - That may prevent or limit access to people from a range of social and cultural backgrounds.
- ***Organisational barriers*** - That may prevent or limit access to people from a wide range of backgrounds, for example opening hours, the availability and format of information etc.

- 4.7.25 It is the case that physical access to the WHS for people with limited mobility is generally good, with the Cathedral Bus providing a key access resource. The buses used for this service are specially designed to enable easy access for the mobility impaired and for those with wheelchairs and pushchairs. Within the WHS any reassessment of the parking arrangements on Palace Green need to include a consideration of the needs of Blue Badge holders.
- 4.7.26 In the case of the Cathedral, physical access provision is good, with appropriate technology used to provide low-key and unobtrusive yet effective ramps and access aids where these are appropriate. Some areas remain inaccessible to those with impaired movement, such as the steep steps to St Cuthbert's shrine and the Tower with its hundreds of steep steps. The Chapter is aware of its responsibilities under the Disability Discrimination Act (DDA) and recently commissioned an access audit. It is not currently thought that Ecclesiastical Exemption applies to the Act, though this requires further investigation. The Chapter regards access for disabled staff to offices and workplaces as potentially more of an issue than for visitors, who are presently reasonably adequately catered for, although there is some room for improvement. The Chapter has been improving access over recent years by a programme of works, but some minor access issues still need addressing.
- 4.7.27 The University is aware of its responsibilities under the DDA, and has carried out access audits in all of its buildings, including the Castle and buildings on Palace Green. The cumulative historic design of the Castle means that it now comprises a difficult range of buildings within which to provide equal access for all. Despite the best efforts of the University, the buildings' steep flights of stairs and spiral stairs mean that several areas of the Castle remain inaccessible to those with impaired mobility function. There is some potential for technological solutions to these issues, such as the installation of webcams, however, some technological innovations have already been proved to be inappropriate: e.g. the University have purchased a climbing wheelchair to provide better access to the Castle, however, the adverse camber on the Black Stairs, and the lack of an even tread depth to the stairs, means that it is not possible to operate the wheelchair safely, and this idea has had to be abandoned.
- 4.7.28 Further research into the physical, intellectual, social, cultural and organisational barriers to access within the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS needs to be undertaken as part of the implementation of the Management Plan, to ensure that these issues are addressed by the Management Plan in a

systematic and sensitive manner across the entire Site. As part of this research a WHS-wide access audit needs to be undertaken, to ensure that there is even coverage of information about access issues across the entire Site. This audit needs to build on the audits already undertaken by the Site's owners and managers, collating their findings and addressing any areas that have fallen outside of the current audit coverage. Potential projects to help address gaps in the availability of access could include:

- Identifying areas usually closed to the public, which could be opened as part of an annual Open Day event;
- Identifying areas that could be more permanently opened to the public, such as areas of the Palace Green Library;
- Facilitating access to the archives that relate to the Site.

Objective 27: Identify and remove physical, social, organisational and intellectual barriers to access across the WHS, where reasonable and practicable.

Short-term and Ongoing Actions:

- Research the physical, intellectual, social and organisational barriers to access within the WHS;
- Identify areas currently closed to the public within the WHS and assess whether it would be appropriate to open these areas to the public in the future, without adversely affecting current uses;
- Undertake an accessibility audit of the whole WHS, building on the individual audits carried out by the Site managers.



5.0 IMPLEMENTATION, MONITORING AND REVIEW

5.0 IMPLEMENTATION, MONITORING AND REVIEW

5.1 Implementing the Plan in Partnership

5.1.1 The organisations that have worked together to develop the Management Plan for the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS now need to continue to work in partnership to implement its aims and objectives to secure the protection of the WHS, and its Outstanding Universal Value and related significances for future generations. The implementation of the Management Plan's objectives requires the support and participation of these and other organisations, individuals and funding bodies. The Plan itself can provide the focus for coordinating this effort, but it requires a significant level of continued commitment and resources if it is to succeed.

5.1.2 The recognition of this commitment to the WHS and the implementation of the Management Plan is implicit in the work of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan Steering Group (to be the WHS Coordinating Committee - see Section 4.3.1). This group was responsible for bringing this WHS Management Plan to fruition, and have been working together for several years in this capacity. The existence of the Steering Group / Coordinating Committee represents a long-term commitment by its members to conserving and improving the WHS.

5.1.3 The members of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group / Coordinating Committee have a central role to play in the implementation and monitoring of the Management Plan. They have an important role to play in creating a sense of ownership and support for the objectives of the Plan amongst all users of the Site, and those that may be affected by the Plan. They have a responsibility to promote the Plan to potential funders, to raise the funds necessary to address the key issues raised in the Plan and to work towards the removal of the Castle from the English Heritage Buildings at Risk Register. In order that progress with the plan may continue, the advisory and coordinating role of the WHS Management Plan Steering Group / Coordinating Committee needs to continue.

5.2 Action Plan

5.2.1 The objectives set out in the Management Plan will be implemented through a wide range of actions. These actions are to be undertaken by the agencies and bodies responsible for planning and management in and around the WHS. Whether these actions are implemented by a single body or require a partnership approach, it is of fundamental importance that they are undertaken within the framework established by the WHS Management Plan.

5.2.2 The actions are collated in the following section and are laid out in a series of tables. All actions are related to particular objectives and issues.

5.2.3 The following abbreviations are used to identify the agencies or bodies with the lead responsibility for implementation:

DCC	Durham County Council
DCMS	Department for Culture, Media and Sport
DC	Durham Cathedral Chapter
DCA	Durham City Arts
CoD	City of Durham Council
DRMG	Durham Riverbanks Management Group
EH	English Heritage
HLF	Heritage Lottery Fund - (possible funding source)
ICOMOS	International Council on Monuments and Sites (UK)
ONE	One NorthEast
STJ	St John's College
UD	University of Durham
WHC	World Heritage Committee
WHS	Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Coordination Committee

5.2.4 Target dates for implementation are either specifically stated or are indicated as follows:

Ongoing	A continuing ongoing action / project with no defined start / finish date
Short Term	Action / Project to be completed within 5 years
Medium Term	Action / Project to be completed within 10 years
Long Term	Action / Project to be completed within 30 years

5.2.5 The short-term and ongoing actions are shaded in grey on the Action Plan, in order to highlight the actions that require immediate attention. These actions are also highlighted in Section 4.0, beneath the relevant objective.

THEME1: MANAGING THE WORLD HERITAGE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 1: Establish a WHS Coordinating Committee.	1.1 Formally establish the WHS Coordinating Committee	DCMS, DC, CoD, DCC, EH, ICOMOS, STJ, UD, ONE	Short-term
	1.2 Endorse the WHS Management Plan as the overarching document to guide the actions of the WHS Coordinating Committee.	WHS	Short-term
	1.3 Consider the appointment/nomination of a WHS Officer for the Site.	WHS	Short-term
Objective 2: Recommend that DCMS invite the UNESCO World Heritage Committee to approve a revised Statement of Significance and the extension of the Site to include Palace Green and undertake a future review of the WHS boundary	2.1 Recommend to DCMS that they propose to the World Heritage Committee that the inscribed WHS is expanded to include Palace Green and that a revised Statement of Significance be adopted.	WHS, DCMS, WHC	Short-term
	2.2 English Heritage and the University of Durham to agree the schedule of works required for removing the Castle from the Register of 'Buildings at Risk'.	EH, UD	Short-term and Ongoing
	2.3 Funding to be sought for the works to the Castle and the works to remove the Castle from the 'Buildings at Risk' Register to be implemented.	WHS, HLF	Short-term and Ongoing
	2.4 Support the implementation of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan and the projects it contains (see Appendix 8 and Objective 3).	DRMG	Ongoing
	2.5 Include a review of the Site boundary during the 2010 review of the WHS Management Plan.	WHS	Medium-term

THEME1: MANAGING THE WORLD HERITAGE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 3: Conserve the setting of the WHS and encourage appropriate and sensitive development to support the ongoing regeneration of Durham and its environs.	3.1 Implement the Riverbanks Management Plan and its programme of Projects (see Appendix 8 and Objective 2).	DRMG	Short-term and ongoing
	3.2 Ensure that future reviews of national, regional, county and local plan policies connected with the protection of the WHS and its setting are in line with WHS Management Plan Objectives	DCC, CoD, ONE	Ongoing
	3.3 Ensure that the sensitivity of the setting of the WHS is taken into account during future reviews of the City Centre Conservation Area and of the policies that relate to it.	CoD	Ongoing
	3.4 Map the geographical extents of the Inner Bowl and Outer Bowl.	WHS, CoD, DCC	Short-term
	3.5 Establish dialogue with local landowners and managers to review land management regimes within the Inner Bowl	CoD, DCC, ONE, EH	Medium-term and ongoing
	3.6 Consider undertaking a detailed historic environment and townscape characterisation of the WHS and its immediate environs, to enhance understanding and to devise detailed actions for the conservation of this area.	CoD, DCC, EH, ONE	Long-term
Objective 4: Monitor risks and periodically review the risk monitoring process.	4.1 Ensure that 'sleepers' are put in strategic locations in the key buildings at the WHS, and that these are regularly monitored.	UD, DC	Short-term and ongoing
	4.2 Continue to liase with the County Durham and Darlington Fire and Rescue Service to ensure that risk assessments and fire precautions continue to be of the highest quality possible.	UD, DC, CDDFRS	Ongoing
	4.3 Regularly review risk assessment and monitoring procedures.	WHS, CDDFRS	Ongoing
	4.4 Research the geological stability of the WHS.	WHS	Long-term

THEME1: MANAGING THE WORLD HERITAGE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 5: Seek funding for the management, conservation and promotion of the WHS.	5.1 Actively seek funding for the Site, within the priorities set out by the WHS Management Plan.	DC, UD, HLF, EH, ONE	Ongoing
Objective 6: Regularly monitor the condition of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS in line with the indicators in the Management Plan and periodically review the Management Plan.	6.1 Monitor the Site on a yearly basis using the agreed indicators.	WHS	Short-term and ongoing
	6.2 Fulfil the State Party requirements for Periodic Reporting every 6 years.	WHS, DCMS	Medium-term and ongoing
	6.3 Review the Management Plan every 6 years.	WHS	Ongoing

THEME 2: CONSERVING THE SITE AND ITS SIGNIFICANCES	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 7: Continue to monitor and deepen an understanding of the built heritage resource to ensure that change is well managed and problems are rapidly identified and addressed.	7.1 Continue to undertake and implement the quinquennial inspections for the Cathedral, Cathedral Precinct, College and Prebends Bridge.	DC	Ongoing
	7.2 Consider the creation of a Conservation Plan for the Cathedral, Cathedral Precinct, College and Bridge.	DC	Short-term
	7.3 Implement a programme of quinquennial inspections for the Castle.	UD	Short-term and ongoing
	7.4 Consider the creation of a Conservation Statement for St Mary the Less and the Parsonage.	STJ	Short-term
Objective 8: Ensure that the WH Site's owners are supported in their management and conservation of the WHS.	8.1 Seek to ensure that the WHS owners have the appropriate funding in order to complete their conservation works.	WHS, HLF, ONE, EH	Ongoing
	8.2 Continue the good working relationship between the WHS owners and advisory partners, such as English Heritage and City of Durham Council.	UD, DC, CoD, DCC, EH, ONE	Ongoing
Objective 9: Ensure that the built heritage of the WHS is conserved, and that sympathetic materials, styles and techniques are utilised by all conservation projects with the WHS.	9.1 Continue the long-term programme for repairs to the Cathedral's external stone.	DC	Ongoing
	9.2 Continue the conservation of the College and Prebends Bridge.	DC	Ongoing
	9.3 Maintain the Castle's roofs.	UD	Short-term and Ongoing

THEME 2: CONSERVING THE SITE AND ITS SIGNIFICANCES	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
	9.4 Devise and implement a long-term programme of external stone repairs, and where necessary replacement, for the Castle.	UD	Short-term and Ongoing
	9.5 Complete the environmental works for the University's Cosin Library.	UD	Short-term
	9.7 Complete the necessary building conservation works on Palace Green.	UD, CoD	Short-term and ongoing
	9.8 Devise and implement Conservation Plans for the key buildings in the WHS (see Objective 7).	DC, UD	Short-term and Ongoing
Objective 10: Complete the works necessary to remove the Castle from the English Heritage 'Buildings at Risk' Register.	10.1 Agree and implement an appropriate conservation programme for the Castle, ideally using a current Conservation Plan as a tool.	UD, EH, HLF, ONE	Short-term
Objective 11: Continue to develop and implement the high quality management of the Peninsula's archaeological and architectural history resource.	11.1 Support the Cathedral's ongoing employment of their resident archaeologist and consultant archaeologist.	WHS	Ongoing
	11.2 Explore methods of sharing information across all the archaeological repositories in the City and County to share best practice, information and research.	WHS, DCC, EH, UD	Short-term and Ongoing
	11.3 Explore the possibility of linking the Cathedral's archaeological archive with the statutory repository of the County Sites and Monuments Record (see Objective 22).	DC, DCC	Short-term and Ongoing
	11.4 Ensure that the WHS and its archaeology is incorporated within the North East Regional Research Framework for the Historic Environment.	DCC, UD, DC, EH	Short-term and Ongoing
	11.5 Implement a programme of publication and dissemination of research into the archaeology of the WHS.	WHS	Medium-term

THEME 2: CONSERVING THE SITE AND ITS SIGNIFICANCES	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 12: Conserve and enhance the historic character and form of the Peninsula's and the WH Site's historic townscapes, landscapes and open spaces.	12.1 Research historic options for, and if appropriate restore, the historic form and streetscape details of Palace Green and the Cathedral College.	DC, UD, CoD, EH, HLF, ONE	Medium Term
Objective 13: Continue to research, document and conserve the WH Site's intangible values, qualities and significances.	13.1 Create and implement a strategy for the conservation of the intangible values, qualities and significances of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS.	WHS	Medium-term
	13.2 Research and document the intangible qualities and significances of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS.	WHS	Medium-term
	13.3 Research the meaning of the WH Site's intangible values, qualities and significances for present and past societies.	WHS	Medium-term
	13.4 Research the effectiveness of communicating intangible values, qualities and significances to contemporary society, and increasing awareness of them.	WHS	Medium-term
Objective 14: Continue to support the skills present at the WHS, including those skills relating to Christian worship, education, built heritage conservation and music	14.1 Ensure the continuing primary uses of the WHS, for Christian Worship and for education.	WHS	Short-term
	14.2 Ensure the continued conservation of the Christian values and practices of the WHS, which contribute to the WH Site's Outstanding Universal Value.	DC	Short-term and Ongoing
	14.3 Support the development of the built heritage conservation apprenticeship schemes.	DC, UD, EH, HLF, ONE	Short-term and Ongoing
	14.4 Support the Cathedral's plans for developing musical skills.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing

THEME 2: CONSERVING THE SITE AND ITS SIGNIFICANCES	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 15: Further develop the high standard of collections curation at the WHS.	15.1 Regularly review security measures for collections held at the WHS.	DC, UD, STJ	Ongoing
	15.2 Research and consult to assess whether Registered Museum status would benefit the University Library collections.	UD	Short-term
	15.3 Consider allowing limited and strictly controlled access to the non-public collections.	DC, UD, STJ	Medium-term

THEME 3: USING THE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 16: Ensure that the aims of the University complement the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS.	No actions currently identified.		
Objective 17: Ensure that Christian worship remains the primary use of the Cathedral, and that other uses do not impact upon this function.	No actions currently identified.		
Objective 18: Maintain, enhance and support community access and activities in the WHS.	18.1 Continue to provide community facilities and events at the WHS.	WHS	Ongoing
	18.2 Ensure that community uses of the Peninsula conserve the WH Site's Outstanding Universal Value and related significances.	WHS	Ongoing
	18.3 Increase the use of the WHS as a local and regional icon.	WHS	Ongoing
Objective 19: Continue to develop a co-ordinated, high quality sustainable visitor experience at the WHS, which does not impact negatively on the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS	19.1 Conduct primary market research to determine the profile of current visitors and patterns of visitation to the WHS.	WHS	Short-term and ongoing
	19.2 Support the continued provision of free access for all to the Cathedral	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	19.3 Consider the preparation and implementation of a WHS-wide Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy	WHS	Short-term and ongoing
	19.4 Improve visitor management, access, movement, orientation and facilities within the WHS and its environs.	WHS	Ongoing

THEME 3: USING THE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
	19.5 Support the plans of the WHS owners to develop their visitor offer, ensuring that these are in keeping with the conservation of the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	19.6 Link the WHS with tourism work being conducted by the Durham Partnership, ONE and the City and County Councils.	WHS	Short-term
	19.7 Optimise visitor numbers to the WHS, ensuring that the Outstanding Universal Value, related significances, character and setting of the WHS are not adversely affected.	WHS	Ongoing
	19.8 Develop monitoring procedures to regularly assess the impact of visitors on the WHS.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	19.9 Ensure that existing and future events and attractions within the WHS and its setting conserve and promote the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
Objective 20: Maximise the benefits brought to the region by the sustainable and appropriate use of the WHS as a visitor attraction, and maximise the benefit to the WHS of the local and regional development of Durham's tourism offer.	20.1 Enhance links to local attractions (in the setting of the WHS and in the City as a whole), to develop a stronger Durham Heritage visitor experience, and to link this experience to the broader Durham leisure experience.	WHS	Short-term
	20.2 Liase with partners to ensure that the greatest opportunities and benefits are derived for the WHS in relation to new tourism initiatives, such as the Durham Partnership Studies.	WHS	Ongoing
	20.3 Work with partners to integrate the WHS within local and regional tourism strategies, to ensure that the regional benefits of the WHS as a tourism driver are maximised.	WHS	Ongoing

THEME 4: ENHANCING UNDERSTANDING OF THE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 21: Continue to support and enhance the high quality of educational provision at the WHS in a manner that is inclusive and accessible to all.	21.1 Raise awareness of the World Heritage Education Kit as a teaching aid for local schools and for schools using the WHS.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.2 Seek greater links between the WHS and local schools, and between local schools and World Heritage in general.	WHS	Ongoing
	21.3 Examine ways to coordinate and strengthen educational provision at the WHS, through shared skills, knowledge, promotion and resources.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.4 Seek opportunities to promote the WHS, its Outstanding Universal Value, its related significances and World Heritage values to local people and to visitors, through such outlets as the Cathedral Bus, the local libraries and the Tourism Information Centre.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.5 Seek links with Hadrian's Wall WHS and with the Monkwearmouth and Jarrow tentative Site to promote interaction between the resident communities, such as joint art projects, school visits and events.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.6 Continue to support and expand the educational provision at the Cathedral, including the work of the Cathedral Education Officer and the Cathedral and Education and Resources Centre.	DC	Ongoing
	21.7 Continue to support The Chorister School in their provision of educational excellence at the WHS.	DC	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.8 Create new provision for educational groups at the Castle.	UD	Short term

THEME 4: ENHANCING UNDERSTANDING OF THE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
	21.9 Explore how the skills of the University could be combined with those of Durham City Arts to create community art projects to celebrate the Outstanding Universal Value of the Site.	UD, DCA	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.10 Create WHS awareness-raising activities amongst the students of the Castle and the University.	UD	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.11 Support the ongoing development of the University Library as an educational resource that is accessible to all.	UD	Ongoing
	21.12 Support and expand educational links between the Old Fulling Mill and the WHS.	WHS	Ongoing
	21.13 Encourage and seek to enable longer opening hours at the Durham Heritage Centre and Museum.	WHS, Bow Trustees	Short term and Ongoing
	21.14 Continue to expand the programme of annual Heritage Open Days within the WHS.	WHS	Ongoing
	21.15 Seek to celebrate global diversity through events and exhibitions.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.16 Examine using the spaces housed within the WHS for exhibitions of local community heritage, art and culture.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.17 Seek opportunities to promote an understanding of the development of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS and its relationship with its own historic landscape.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	21.18 Continue to support the work of the Cathedral Friends and of the volunteers employed at the Site.	WHS	Ongoing

THEME 4: ENHANCING UNDERSTANDING OF THE SITE	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
	21.19 Continue to support the educational work of the Cathedral Friends, and encourage them to continue to explore the Christian heritage and Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the Site in their programme of lectures.	WHS	Ongoing
Objective 22: Support high quality research that enhances the understanding and management of the WHS.	22.1 Support the Cathedral's ongoing archaeological research programme.	WHS	Ongoing
	22.2 Create and implement a WHS Research Strategy.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	22.3 Create an oral history project to document the extensive knowledge about the WHS held in the memories of long-serving staff.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	22.4 Through the Research Strategy explore the potential for a single digital catalogue and digital archive of key records relating to the WHS, made available on an accessible website or CD-Rom.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	22.5 Explore the possibility for linking the Cathedral's archaeological archive with the statutory repository of the County Sites and Monuments Record (see Objective 11).	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	22.6 Agree a programme for disseminating and publishing research.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing

THEME 5: IMPROVING ACCESS AND SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 23: Improve access to the WHS for non-vehicular users and promote pedestrian and cycle modes of transport.	23.1 Support the implementation of the County Durham Cycling Strategy.	WHS, DCC	Ongoing
	23.2 Encourage the implementation of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan review of cycle access, and ensure that any physical improvement respect the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting, subject to proper safeguards for safety on the riverbanks.	WHS, DRMG	Ongoing
	23.3 Encourage the implementation of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan pedestrian access improvements, and ensure that these respect the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.	WHS, DRMG	Ongoing
	23.4 Encourage the provision of 'safe routes to school' within the WHS.	WHS, DC	Short-term
	23.5 Encourage the creation of a City-wide cycling strategy and a City-wide pedestrian strategy and ensure that the needs and significances of the WHS are taken into account during their creation and implementation.	WHS, CoD	Medium-term
Objective 24: Improve access between the bus and rail stations and the WHS, and encourage improvements to the facilities and information available at the stations.	24.1 Encourage the improvement of the facilities and visitor information available at the bus and train stations, including the second phase of the railway station improvements.	WHS	Ongoing
	24.2 Explore the provision of further transport services between the stations and the WHS as part of the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing

THEME 5: IMPROVING ACCESS AND SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
	24.3 Support the continued development and provision of the Cathedral Bus service, including the further development of easily accessible information about the service, and the promotion of the bus as a key route to the WHS.	WHS	Ongoing
	24.4 Ensure that any recommendations contained within the Durham Accessibility study conserve the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.	WHS	Short-term and Ongoing
	24.5 Monitor transport modes used by visitors and update the proposed WHS Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy accordingly.	WHS	Medium-term
	24.6 Work with partners to improve the pedestrian routes from the stations to the City centre and WHS, including the provision of a clear way marked trail.	WHS	Medium-term
Objective 25: Improve the facilities and experience for coach parties to the WHS in a way that does not impact upon the Outstanding Universal Value of the WHS and its setting.	25.1 Ensure that the proposals contained within the Durham Partnership's Accessibility Study respect the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.	WHS,	Short-term
	25.2 Support the implementation of appropriate solutions to coach related issues presented by the Durham Partnerships Accessibility Study.	WHS,	Short-term
	25.3 Ensure that coach operators are supplied with information about the WHS and its visitor facilities.	WHS	Ongoing

THEME 5: IMPROVING ACCESS AND SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
Objective 26: Monitor and assess car use within the WHS.	26.1 Support the continuing implementation of the Congestion Charge and the Controlled Parking Zone around the WHS, ensuring that their implementation respects the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.	WHS, DCC	Short-term and Ongoing
	26.2 Instigate an assessment of car use and car parking within the WHS, to identify key issues.	WHS	Short-term
	26.3 Contact CDDFRS to discuss any issues they may face with gaining access to the buildings around Palace Green when the Green is used for car parking.	WHS, CDDFRS	Ongoing
	26.4 Ensure that the implementation of the County Council's expansion of the Park and Ride system does not impact on the Outstanding Universal Value and related significances of the WHS and its setting.	WHS, DCC	Short-term and Ongoing
	26.5 Ensure that orientation material is provided at the Park and Ride car parks, encouraging visitors to visit the WHS.	WHS, DCC	Short-term and Ongoing
Objective 27: Identify and remove physical, social, organisational and intellectual barriers to access across the WHS, where reasonable and practicable.	27.1 Research the physical, intellectual, social and organisation barriers to access within the WHS.	WHS	Short-term
	27.2 Identify areas currently closed to the public within the WHS and assess whether it would be appropriate to open these areas to the public in the future, without adversely affecting current uses.	WHS	Short-term
	27.3 Undertake an accessibility audit of the whole WHS, building on the individual audits carried out by the Site managers.	WHS	Ongoing

THEME 5: IMPROVING ACCESS AND SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT	<i>Action</i>	<i>Agencies</i>	<i>Target for Implementation</i>
	27.4 Implement solutions to the issues raised by the WHS-wide access audit that are sensitive to the WHS, its Outstanding Universal Value and related significances.	WHS	Medium-term

5.3 Monitoring and Review

5.3.1 New information, changing circumstances or changed perceptions of management priorities can alter the emphasis of the Plan as the knowledge and practical experience of those responsible for the management of the WHS develops. Also, as additional information or knowledge comes to light, the understanding of the significance of the Site and its components also changes. All these will have an effect on the long-term management of the Site.

5.3.2 It is therefore important that the plan is regularly monitored and reviewed; this monitoring and review is also a key requirement of UNESCO's periodic reporting (see Section 1.2). Responsibility for organising and facilitating the monitoring and reviews of the Plan would lie with the WHS Coordinating Committee, though the organisational burden of this task on the Committee would be significantly reduced should a WHS Officer be appointed for the WHS (see 4.3.5 and 5.3.10). Indeed, monitoring and review would form a key part of the workload of the WHS Officer. The key tasks of monitoring and review would be:

- Reviewing each year's work as set out in the action plan;
- Reporting on progress and identifying priorities for the following year;
- Assessing the effectiveness of action in achieving the Management Plan's objectives and reviewing the overall direction of its Vision in response to changing priorities and needs; and
- Assessing the progress of the plan in relation to a series of indicators.

5.3.3 In terms of comprehensive reviews, it is anticipated that the actions and objectives set out in the Management Plan will retain their relevance for up to five to ten years, and the Key Principles are likely to be relevant for much longer. A formal review of the Management Plan should be undertaken every six years, and the Plan should be annually revised and modified as required to reflect changed circumstances; for the latter purpose an amendment sheet has been included. Notifications of changes should be issued to all members of the Coordinating Committee and other agencies and bodies with an interest in the management of the Site. It is also a requirement of the World Heritage Committee that each State Party fulfils their obligations for Periodic Reporting. Each WHS will need to complete a Periodic Reporting questionnaire issued by the State Party, which may include a review of the Site's Management Plan, in order for this process to be completed. Periodic Reporting is fixed on a 6-year cycle.

Key Indicators for Measuring the State of Conservation of the WHS

5.3.4 As part of the 6-year round of periodic reporting, UNESCO asks that Site managers actively monitor the condition of their Site, using a number of indicators. Best practice suggests that these indicators should fulfil a number of criteria, including that they are:

- Already in existence;
- Readily available;
- Straightforward to understand; and
- Relevant to the Site.

5.3.5 Indicators for Durham have been selected to monitor the state of conservation across the WHS. These indicators are presented in the following section under the following headings:

- Protection of the heritage assets;
- Conservation of the heritage assets;
- Presentation of the heritage assets; and
- Education in respect of the heritage assets.

Protection of the Heritage Assets

5.3.6 Progress with protection will be assessed by:

- *Reviewing the number of Listed Buildings within the Site.* The baseline figures for Listed Buildings of Grades I, II* and II is known and any change from that baseline through de-listing, demolition, spot-listing or comprehensive review will indicate progress with the protection of individual buildings.
- *Reviewing the Conservation Area at the Site.* The whole of the Site is protected by Conservation Area status and City of Durham Council has a statutory duty to review its Conservation Areas from time to time. The policy framework related to the Conservation Areas and optional additional controls such as Article 4 Directions will also need to be reviewed and any changes tracked over time.
- *Adopting the Management Plan, or summary note of the Plan, as a Supplementary Planning Document,* should this be acceptable to the WHS Coordinating Committee. There is at present no

specific Supplementary Planning Guidance (or the new Supplementary Planning Document) for WHS issues: such guidance should be produced and subjected to adequate public consultation.

- *Reviewing the archaeological resource of the Site.* There are two Scheduled Monuments at the Site. As with Listed Buildings, the monitoring of scheduled monuments will reveal progress with the protection of these monuments. In addition, the monitoring of the implementation of PPG16 within the Site would provide an overview of the implementation of archaeological protection within the WHS. This could be achieved through collecting data about the number of below-ground interventions within the Site, undertaken for whatever reason, compared with the number of such interventions that were accompanied by archaeological, input or conditions.

Conservation of the Heritage Assets

5.3.7 Progress with monitoring conservation will be assessed by:

- *Updating the 'Buildings At Risk' Register.* English Heritage maintains a 'Buildings At Risk' Register for Grade I and II* Listed Buildings (and Scheduled Monuments) to promote concerted action and as a framework for determining funding priorities. This register is regularly revised following rapid surveys. The baseline register and any changes to them will give a good indication of progress with the conservation of buildings.
- *Reviewing the number of Conservation Plans and Conservation Statements and their effectiveness.* There are currently no completed Conservation Plans or Conservation Statements for the buildings and assets at the Site. The creation of Conservation Plans will identify how the proper conservation and maintenance of the buildings will be achieved. The review of the effectiveness of existing Conservation Plans will indicate progress with the conservation of those specific buildings.
- *Reviewing quinquennial surveys.* The Chapter already undertakes quinquennial surveys for the key structures within the WHS in their care, and it is proposed that the University resumes its quinquennial surveys for the Castle. Reviewing the quantity of work contained in these surveys and the work that remains outstanding are key indicators for understanding the conservation of the Site's built assets.
- *Reviewing Conservation Area Appraisals.* Conservation Area Appraisals are in various stages of production for all of the Conservation Areas in Durham City. They provide a robust subjective assessment of the state of conservation of the conservation areas and their character. Regular

review of the appraisals for the Durham City Centre Conservation Area will give an indication of progress with the conservation of the Site.

- *Reviewing the extent of Public Realm works.* Public realm works are currently proposed for the riverbanks. Reviews of the money spent and the square footage of public realm improved will provide a quantitative indication of progress with the conservation of the public realm.
- *Reviewing the levels of grant-aid and levered-in funds.* Various sources of grant aid are, and will be, available to assist in the cost of the conservation of buildings and areas. Reviews of the resources devoted to physical conservation, both in grant-aid and in the value of levered-in funds from owners will provide another measure for the progress made towards the conservation of the Site.
- *Reviewing the impact of transportation factors.* The high volume of traffic through some parts of the Site has a negative impact upon the conservation of the Site, in terms of causing physical damage and impairing appreciation of the buildings. A review of the number of vehicles using Saddler Street and using and parking at Palace Green would provide a measure of whether the situation is improving or deteriorating.

Presentation of the Heritage Assets

5.3.8 It will not be straightforward to effectively monitor this particular factor because many aspects of it are subjective and intangible, but attempts to monitor progress with presentation can be made. Indicators could include:

- A review of the number of facilities open to the public;
- A review of the number of visitors attracted to the facilities at the Site;
- Carrying out surveys of visitor satisfaction with the facilities at the Site; and
- Carrying out a survey of the number and quality of interpretive publications, interpretation boards, websites and audio-visual material.

Education in Respect of the Heritage Assets

- 5.3.9 Monitoring procedures need to be established for interpretation and education. These could focus on simple tests such as reviewing the number of organised educational visits made to the Site by schools and colleges; reviewing direct training provision for training in conservation and tourism skills at colleges in the vicinity of the Site; number of linkages established with other projects etc.

Administrative Arrangements for Monitoring the Property

- 5.3.10 The basis for most of the effective monitoring of the Site is already in place through the established records and practices of the institutions and authorities of the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS Management Plan Steering Group (WHS Coordinating Committee). In particular, the Chapter, City of Durham Council and English Heritage have statutory and discretionary powers in respect of building conservation in its widest sense, whilst the University and St Johns have a duty of care for their buildings. The proposed WHS Officer can play a coordinating role in the collection and collation of the necessary information from each of the key stakeholders. The WHS Coordinating Committee and the WHS Officer can ensure that any gaps in the administrative arrangements for effectively and regularly monitoring the Site are filled.

APPENDIX 1: MEMBERS OF THE WHS MANAGEMENT PLAN STEERING GROUP

Chair: One NorthEast

Members: Antonia Carr Locke (Prior to Jan 2004) - Department for Culture, Media & Sport
Peter Marsden (Post Jan 2004) - Department for Culture, Media & Sport
Reverend Canon Martin Kitchen - Durham Cathedral Dean and Chapter
(Prior to Mar 2003)
Very Reverend Michael Sadgrove - Durham Cathedral Dean and Chapter
(Post Mar 2003)
Tracey Ingle - City of Durham Council
Bob Ward - Durham County Council
Peter Robinson - University of Durham
Dr Christopher Young - English Heritage
Martin Roberts - English Heritage
Carol Pyrah - English Heritage
Susan Denyer - ICOMOS-UK
Reverend Canon Joseph Cassidy - St Chad's College
Right Reverend Stephen Sykes - St John's College
Dr Peter Stone - University of Newcastle upon Tyne
(Post Dec 2003)

Consultants: Chris Blandford - Chris Blandford Associates
Dominic Watkins - Chris Blandford Associates
Pippa Pemberton - Chris Blandford Associates
Andrew Croft - Chris Blandford Associates
Alison MacDonald - Chris Blandford Associates

APPENDIX 2: CONSULTATION PROCESS

Summary of the Consultation Process

- A press launch in Durham Cathedral to promote awareness of the consultative draft document beyond the local area.
- Exhibition display boards available for public inspection at various locations throughout Durham during the three month consultation period.
- The circulation of copied of the consultative document to interested individuals and relevant organisations locally and nationally.
- A web-site dedicated to the consultation where copies of the plan and summaries of the plan could be downloaded and comments made.

Responses

At the end of the public consultation period, fourteen written responses were received on the Consultation Draft Management Plan. Where appropriate, suggestions for changes to the text were incorporated. Notwithstanding a number of constructive comments on matters of detail, the vast majority of respondents generally supported the overall strategy for the management of the WHS as a whole.

Written responses were received from the following individuals, bodies and organisations:

- Amy Bladen (individual)
- City of Durham Council
- City of Durham Trust
- Durham Bat Group
- Durham County Council
- Durham Heritage Centre and Museum
- English Heritage
- Howard Moss (individual)
- John Ashby (individual)
- Michael Woolstenholme (individual)
- Northumbria Gardens Trust
- Roberta Blackman-Woods MP City of Durham
- Royal Society for the Encouragement of Arts, Manufacturers and Commerce
- St Margaret's Allotments

APPENDIX 3: MANAGEMENT STRUCTURES OF THE WH SITE MANAGING BODIES

A3.1 Ownership and Management of the WH Site

A3.1.1 The Cathedral and Cathedral College are owned and managed by the Chapter of Durham Cathedral:

The Chapter of Durham Cathedral
Church of Christ and the Blessed Virgin Mary of Durham
The Chapter Office
The College
Durham DH1 3EH

A3.1.2 The Castle and Palace Green are owned and managed by the University of Durham:

The University of Durham
Old Shire Hall
Durham DH1 3HP

A3.1.3 St John's College manages in perpetuity the Chapel of St Mary's the Less and the Parsonage

St Johns College
3 South Bailey
Durham DH1 3RJ

A3.2 Chapter of Durham Cathedral

A3.2.1 The Cathedral is managed by the Chapter of Durham Cathedral, which is the highest level of the Cathedral organisation. The primary purpose of the Cathedral Chapter is to manage the Cathedral as a place of worship. The Chapter takes responsibility for policy making, decisions and vision. The Chapter comprises the Dean, 5 Canons and 3 Lay Members. Each of the Chapter members has a specific arena of responsibility, in particular:

- Non-liturgical matters are the responsibility of the Chapter Clerk, who is the Chief Executive of the Cathedral;
- The Canon Treasurer oversees the finances and financial affairs of the Cathedral and its operation;
- The Canon Librarian has responsibility for the Library.

A3.2.2 The Chapter usually meets 11 times a year, with a meeting taking place in most months. The Chapter is advised in the management of the Cathedral by a number of specialist members of staff and retained consultants. These include the Cathedral's resident archaeologist, and the consultant Cathedral Architect and a consultant archaeologist; these three are not in the direct employment of the Cathedral.

A3.2.3 Beneath the Chapter are the ten Heads of Department. These oversee departments of a variety of sizes, and have remits ranging from education to gardening to finances to music. The relevant Chapter member oversees each of the Heads of Department.

A3.3 The University

A3.3.1 The University owns Palace Green and the buildings along Palace Green, along with the Castle. University College manages the exterior of all the buildings north of the Castle's gate, in conjunction with the Estates and Buildings Department; University College manages the interior and the collections. In conjunction with the Estates and Buildings Department, the University Library manages all the buildings to the south of the Castle gate, as far as the Music Department Library on Palace Green and the Pace Building running down to the Cathedral banks behind Palace Green. The Library manages the collections contained within these buildings. The Estates and Buildings Department manages all the buildings on the eastern side of Palace Green, and the central space of Palace Green itself. The café in the almshouses is rented by the café business on an internal repairing and insuring lease: the café is responsible for the interiors, whilst the University is responsible for the maintenance of the exterior structure and floors.

A3.3.2 The University has an extensive management structure, which is published on Figure A3.1.

A3.3.3 The Council is the highest level of management at the University, and consists of six ex-officio members; eight members elected by the University staff; two members elected by the non-academic staff of the University; the President and Treasurer of the Durham Student Union, who are elected by the students. These elected members can be salaried staff of the University. In addition there are four members appointed by the Chancellor; two members elected by City of Durham Council and one member elected by the County Council, who are not teachers or salaried officers of the University. The four Deans of the University are also in attendance in Council, and no more than eight further members can be appointed by co-option by the Council. The Council meets at least three times every academic year, and has a wide-ranging remit that includes responsibility for: appointments to

University posts; University budgets; the approval of the Corporate Plan and Mission Statement; the approval of the Estate Strategy and Financial Forecasts.

A3.3.4 The University Senate consists of a large number of ex-officio members, including the Vice-Chancellor and the Pro-Vice-Chancellors; the five University Deans; the Heads of Houses; the Heads of Departments; the Librarian and the President of the Durham Student Union. There are currently 18 members appointed by the Academic Electoral Assembly and no more than three co-opted members. The Senate meets once a term, with a second meeting held if business requires it.

A3.3.5 A large number of University Committees report to the Senate and the Council.

A3.3.6 Day to day responsibility for maintenance and repair of University buildings lies with the University of Durham Estates and Buildings, who report to the Estate Sub-Committee, who in turn report to the Finance and General Purposes Committee, who report to the University Executive Committee and the Council and Senate. The role of the Estates and Buildings Department with regard to property, is to:

- Advise the University on the optimal use of all its property and monitor costs of the use of space;
- Plan to meet the future needs of the University;
- Ensure that all property is maintained to an appropriate and agreed standard, that meets all statutory requirements, within the resources available, as set out in the Maintenance Strategy;
- Seek to provide a safe and healthy working environment for the whole University and take account of the University's Health and Safety Policy, Environmental Policy and Energy Management programme;
- Recognise the role of the University both as a custodian of historical heritage and as a major contributor to the local community and regional economy.

A3.3.7 The Estates and Buildings Department employs a Conservation Officer and retains a consultant architect.

A3.3.8 University College, who manage the interiors and collections of the Castle, are managed by their Master, who reports to the Senate. The Master is assisted by a Curator, with direct responsibility for works to the interiors and the curation of the College's collections. The Library is managed by the Librarian, who reports to the Library Committee.

A3.4 St John's

A3.4.1 St John's College was founded in 1909. It is both an independent Church of England foundation and a constituent, though independent, college of the University of Durham. The College is a company limited by guarantee and a charity exempt from registration. The principal activity of the charitable company is the maintenance of St John's College, Durham, in connection with the University of Durham, for the education and training of candidates for Holy Orders in the Church of England and to provide general education and training at the University of Durham.

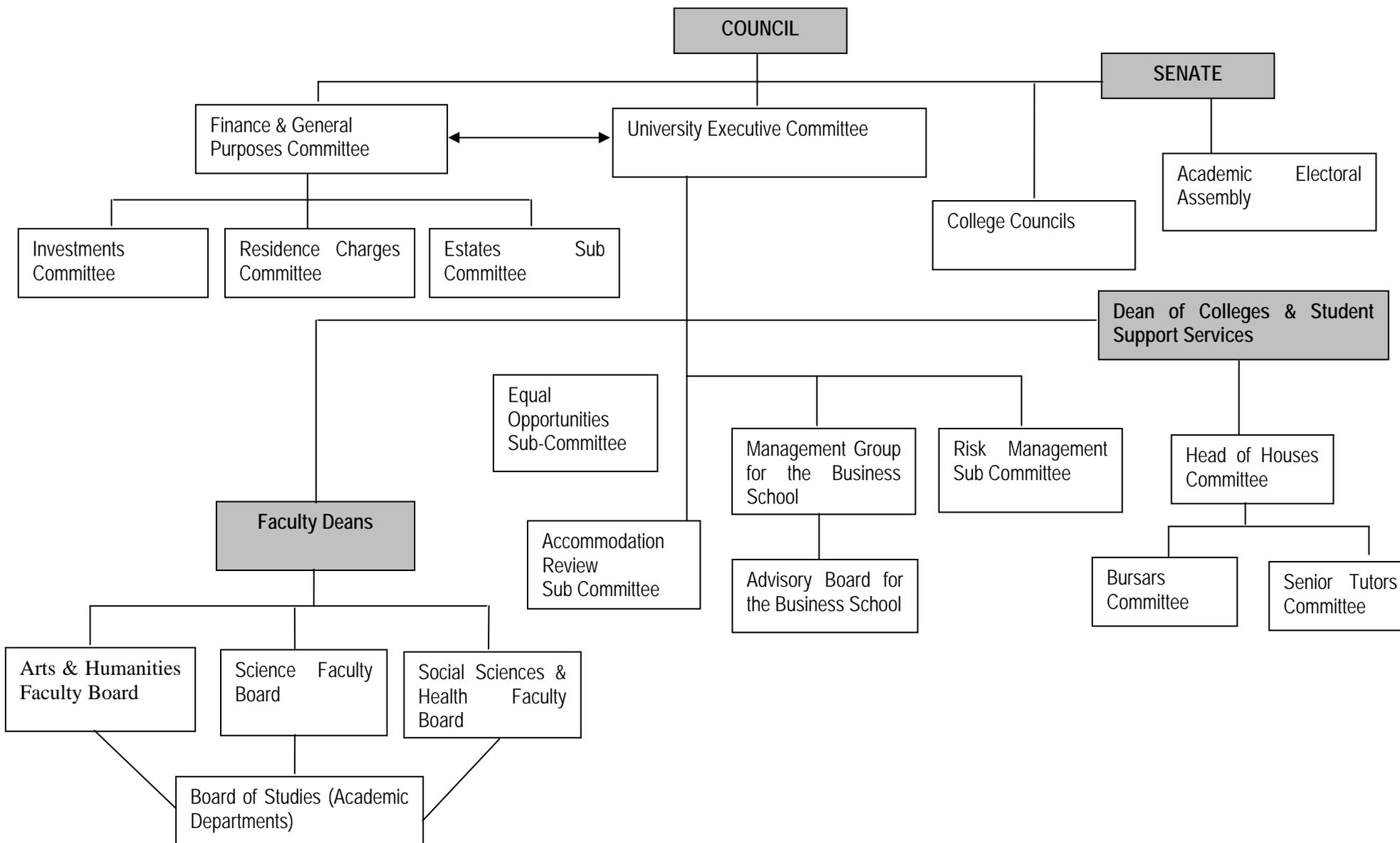
A3.4.2 St John's College is governed by a Council, which meets once a term (three times a year). The Principal manages the entire college. Under him/her are 3 College Officers:

- The Senior Tutor oversees John's Hall (personal tutors, undergraduates and postgraduates),
- The Warden of Cranmer Hall over sees Cranmer Hall (Cranmer Tutors and secretaries, ordinands and postgraduates studying for Cranmer degrees); and
- The Bursar (Finance Office, Catering, Domestic Staff, Compliance Officer, Maintenance Team).

A3.4.3 The College is advised by a consultant architect, and has an internal Maintenance Department.

COMMITTEE STRUCTURE: GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE

As at 21/10/03



APPENDIX 4 REVIEW OF THE WH SITE BOUNDARY

A4.1 Introduction

A4.1.1 The Durham Castle and Cathedral World Heritage Site (WHS / WH Site) was inscribed in 1986 on the World Heritage List. In 1995, the *UK World Heritage Sites Monitoring Report* prepared by ICOMOS-UK identified that the Site boundary was too tightly drawn around the key buildings contained within the Site. This was highlighted in the report as a key issue at the WH Site, and one that needed to be addressed.

A4.1.2 In response to this report, City of Durham Council undertook to seek enlargement of the Site boundary as a matter of policy linked to the Local Plan review process. A number of options for an enlarged Site boundary, together with a buffer zone, were proposed by City of Durham Council as part of a public consultation exercise undertaken in late 2002/early 2003. These proposals have been instrumental in generating and informing debate, and this process has been continued during the development of the WHS Management Plan for the Site.

A4.1.3 This appendix considers the case for enlargement of the Durham WH Site boundary. In doing so, it sets out:

- The criteria for defining WHS boundaries
- An evaluation of the component areas within the immediate environs of the peninsula against the WHS criteria
- An appraisal of six options for enlargement of the Site boundary - plus a 'status quo' option

A4.2 Criteria for Defining WHS Boundaries

The Purpose of a WHS Boundary

A4.2.1 A boundary of a WHS should encapsulate all buildings and/or land that contribute to its 'Outstanding Universal Value' to assist in the conservation and management of the significances for which the Site is designated under the World Heritage Convention. The understanding of the significance of a Site, and the way in which individual components and the surrounding area contribute to that significance, can and does change through time - through increased research for example. It is therefore important that the boundaries of WH Sites are kept under review. Through review it can be ensured that the boundary continues to serve its primary function of defining and protecting the significance of the Site.

WHS Boundary Criteria

A4.2.2 The ICOMOS-UK *Guidelines for the Definition of Boundaries for Candidate World Heritage Sites* (undated) recommend that, beyond the basic understanding of the significance of the Site, the definition of a WHS boundary should be based on a number of criteria, including:

- 1) *The Site boundary should include all those elements of the Site which contribute to its outstanding universal significance, above or below ground. The potential significance of landscape as opposed to individual structures should be borne in mind.*
- 2) *Site boundaries should be based on a thorough understanding and knowledge of the sites concerned. Components of each site should demonstrate the relevant functional or other significant characteristics of buildings and landscape contributing to the outstanding universal significance of the Site.*
- 3) *Complex sites and landscapes should be delineated as far as possible according to extant archaeological or historical topography derived from, and exemplifying the reasons for which the Site is judged to be significant.*
- 4) *Individual components should be demonstrably authentic. Tests of authenticity should be applied in relationship to the archaeological or historical evolution and continued use (when appropriate), with particular regard for either archaeological or architectural integrity of form and landscape. In the case of archaeological sites, the outward appearance of individual structures may not reflect their overall significance.*
- 5) *For ease of management, Sites should be defined as far as possible to coincide with existing or proposed statutory and other formal designations or administrative boundaries, where these are relevant to the criteria for nomination. Proposed boundaries should take account of ownership and the eventual requirements for consultation, but should omit any contiguous areas where the character and integrity has been lost or degraded. As far as possible Sites should be defined as single entities.*
- 6) *In formulating proposals for Site boundaries, the relevant authorities should also review, and if necessary revise statutory and planning protection.*

A4.2.3 In addition, the *Guidelines* also state that:

In practical terms, World Heritage Sites must be manageable. Boundaries drawn too broadly as well as too tightly can make this difficult. Very tight boundaries are a feature of a number of existing UK World Heritage Sites. As a result there have been problems about developments proposed close to Sites but outside the defined boundaries. On the other hand, boundaries drawn too loosely can be equally problematic in lessening awareness of the significance of the Site and bringing into play extraneous issues which are not directly relevant to the essential values of the Site

A4.2.4 In summary, there are four key issues to be taken into consideration in defining a revised Site boundary for Durham. These include:

- Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value - (Criteria 1 & 2)
- Authenticity - (Criterion 4)
- Ease of Management - (Criterion 5)
- Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness - (Criterion 3)

A4.2.5 These issues are considered below.

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

A4.2.6 The Outstanding Universal Value of Durham WHS is derived from its role as a centre of architectural excellence; from its associations with the conversion of England to Christianity; through its role as a pilgrimage centre containing the relics of St Cuthbert, St Oswald and the Venerable Bede; from its dramatic composition, manifesting the secular and religious power of the Prince Bishops and from the intangible values and collections that it contains. The WH Site therefore needs to embody fully these elements of its significance and associated elements that contribute to this significance, ensuring that these are protected.

Authenticity

A4.2.7 The authenticity of individual components is a key aspect in determining a boundary. The authenticity of an urban landscape relates to its form, layout and materials etc. As, by their very nature, urban landscapes are evolved entities, not every building or streetscape in an urban landscape is authentic to a particular period. However, at Durham, the various elements of the WHS are situated in an authentically coherent layout with strong historical precedents. This authentically coherent layout extends across the peninsula, and, arguably, includes the river valley itself. It is important to note that the criteria of authenticity does not preclude modern development within a WHS or its setting.

A4.2.8 Authenticity is a crucial aspect in the assessment of heritage resources and has been defined by ICOMOS in the following way:

"Authenticity refers to the extent to which a resource is materially original or genuine as it was constructed, and as it has aged and weathered in time ... in the case of a heritage resource, its historical authenticity may reflect the significant phases of construction and utilization in different phases of its historical time line. Authenticity can be jeopardized by the destruction of historical strata, the modern replacement of original elements and the addition of new elements" (Fielden & Jokilehto, 1998, 17).

A4.2.9 It is recommended by the UNESCO / World Heritage Committee (1995) Operational Guidelines that there are four aspects to the concept of authenticity:

- Authenticity in design;
- Authenticity in materials;
- Authenticity in workmanship; and
- Authenticity in setting.

A4.2.10 As an example, the wholesale Georgian re-facing of medieval buildings in the North and South Bailey would be authentic, as it reflects the changing use of this area enclosed by the Castle Walls during the historic time line of the peninsula. A row of medieval buildings converted during recent years to shops with prominent modern-styled shopfronts would not be considered to be wholly authentic.

Ease of Management

A4.2.11 The ownership of the Site is a key criterion for defining the boundary - the fewer individual owners, the easier the co-ordinated management of the Site is likely to be. Durham WHS is a relatively straightforward property in this regard, containing only three owners within its current boundary with only a handful of additional owners within its immediate proximity.

A4.2.12 The management issues contained within the Site are also a key factor to consider when deciding the boundary of a Site. This consideration needs to examine the number and scale of issues, as well as ensuring that key issues affecting the significance of the Site are contained within its bounds, and are thus under the direct influence of the Steering Group. Currently the key issues at the Site revolve around the conservation of the built fabric and issues of visitor and other 'people' management; to expand the WHS into the river gorge would bring issues of nature conservation management that are not currently a consideration. However, to not include the river gorge within the WHS means that the

management of the geological structures on which the key buildings sit is not directly under the management of the Steering Group.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- A4.2.13 The final criterion is the cohesiveness of the boundary and its historical integrity. Currently the Durham WHS boundary is drawn tightly around its two key features: the Cathedral and the Castle, resulting in both a tight boundary and a WHS that is divided into two areas. It could be argued that this boundary is not cohesive and does not realistically represent the historic form of the Site.
- A4.2.14 The topography of the WHS is one of its defining characteristics. The topography of the Site not only allows the dramatic visual dominance of the WHS above the town, but can also be considered to be the defining reason for the location of the Cathedral and Castle. The topography has not only allowed the defensive function of the Castle and Cathedral to be so successful, but it has also determined the layout of the streets in the North and South Bailey.

Other Factors

- A4.2.15 In addition to the above there are a number of other issues that need to be considered when deciding the boundary for the WHS at Durham. These are briefly outlined below.

Funding

- A4.2.16 Funding is a key aspect of the 'ease of management' criteria, and is particularly relevant to the conservation of the Durham WHS. English Heritage has identified the Castle as a 'Building at Risk' for which substantial funds are required to undertake urgent conservation works.
- A4.2.17 It is not currently apparent that World Heritage Site status provides a special case for funding to a Site. However the creation of an agreed WHS Management Plan can help enhance the attractiveness of the site to funders by providing a co-ordinated management strategy for the future.
- A4.2.18 It has been noted that there is a concern that expanding the WHS at Durham would dilute the funding opportunities for resolving key conservation issues, however this need not be the case.

'Sense of Place'

- A4.2.19 Durham has a very distinctive sense of place, with an intimate relationship with the area's dramatic topography. In his *"Essays on Sense of Place"*, Douglas Pocock notes that *"Historically it is as if people listened to what the landscape was saying and built accordingly"* (Pocock, 1999, 11). Pocock goes on to attempt to define what constitutes this essential 'Durhamness' concluding that it is essentially a series of juxtaposed dualities creating a unique experience of surprise, monumental climax, domesticity, greenness, physical disposition and human association.
- A4.2.20 The Castle and Cathedral are at the core of this 'Durhamness'. These buildings create not only the unique sense of place experienced within their immediate presence, but also the dramatic skyline views that change daily with the moving sun and seasonally with the passing year. Around these core buildings on the plateau lies the distinctive townscape of the Bailey, with its refronted Georgian buildings and intimate streetscape. The peninsula and the surrounding gorge riverscape are also distinctive features of Durham, with its well-wooded slopes providing a contrast to the town beyond sitting within its wider landscape bowl.
- A4.2.21 The Site would benefit from having a strong sense of identity, which would be enabled by a clear and coherent boundary that reflects this special sense of 'Durhamness'.

Quality

- A4.2.22 Quality is an essential part of the external identity of the WHS. For example, the designed gardens along the peninsula riverbanks are in themselves not necessarily of 'WHS quality'. However, the current proposals to restore these as part of the Riverbanks Management Plan would enhance quality of the riverbanks, thus contributing to the experience and external image of the peninsula as being of 'WHS quality'.

Visitors and Interpretation

- A4.2.23 Visitors and interpretation would benefit from consideration as part of the criteria for deciding the WHS boundary. Cohesiveness, 'sense of place' and quality would all benefit the visitor experience, and interpretation strategies would be easier to apply to a site with these inherent qualities.

A4.3 Evaluation of Component Areas

A4.3.1 The component areas of the WHS and its immediate environs are described in Section 2.3 of the Management Plan. They have been devised through a rapid character analysis of the historic environment and townscape of the Site and its surroundings and are mapped on Figure 2.5. These component areas form the basis of the following discussion, in which they are evaluated against the WHS criteria set out in Section A4.2 above.

A. The Medieval Town Core

A4.3.2 Historically the medieval town was always a separate entity from the Castle and Cathedral complex with its own town walls for defence. Though the area contains significant refronted medieval buildings and considerable depths of archaeological deposits, the modern townscape has been significantly altered during the last 200 years, and would probably not qualify under the strict WHS boundary criteria of authenticity and integrity. Ease of management would be compromised by including this area, as not only would a large number of property owners be brought into the WHS but a larger number of issues would also need to be considered, such as the management of retail requirements.

B. The Castle

A4.3.3 The Castle is currently contained within the WHS boundary. It has a single owner, with a single management structure and contains a limited number of issues, the most notable being the physical conservation of the fabric and the sensitive accommodation of the needs of modern students. Criteria of authenticity, historic integrity are fulfilled here, whilst the tight boundary around the site brings into question the issue of cohesiveness. This area contributes directly to the Outstanding Universal Values of the Site.

C. Palace Green

A4.3.4 The current form of the open space of Palace Green dates to the 12th century, and the buildings lining its extent have been altered and rebuilt during the intervening centuries. This area provides an important setting for both the Cathedral and the Castle, joining their two main facades. Palace Green should therefore pass tests of authenticity and historical integrity. The area is owned and managed by a single owner, the University, and the management issues it encapsulates are relatively straightforward, revolving around appropriate use of the open space, including parking, and the sensitive accommodation of modern university needs within the buildings that line its length. As part of

the Castle and Cathedral complex, this area contributes directly to the Outstanding Universal Values of the Site.

D. The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct

- A4.3.5 The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct are already an integral part of the WHS. For the most part it has a single owner, though the independent university college of St John's does own two buildings within this area. There a relatively small number of management issues, generally revolving around the physical conservation of the fabric and the accommodation of the needs of modern users. Criteria of authenticity and historical integrity are fulfilled, though the tight boundary around the Cathedral Precinct does raise the question of cohesiveness. This area contributes directly to the Outstanding Universal Values of the Site.

E. The Bailey

- A4.3.6 The Bailey consists of the area between the inner Cathedral Precinct wall and the outer Castle Wall. This area consists of a single street lined with medieval houses whose fronts have largely been remodelled during the Georgian era. This change is historically appropriate and the area should fulfil both requirements of historic integrity and authenticity. The area is largely owned by the University, along with the independent colleges of St Chad's and St John's, though there are a small number of private owners within the Bailey. Management issues concentrate on the built heritage, with the conservation of the Castle Wall being a particular issue, as is the issue of accommodating modern needs sensitively within old buildings. As part of the townscape of the defensive peninsula plateau and contained within the Castle Walls, this area contributes directly to the Outstanding Universal Values of the Site.

F. The Peninsula Riverbanks

- A4.3.7 The present form of the peninsula riverbanks is the result of a millennium of human interaction with nature. The banks would once have been kept clear of trees for defensive purposes and would have been used for cesspits and midden deposits; in the 18th century large areas became terraced gardens, and now the wooded banks provide the distinctive foreground for the famous views of the Castle and Cathedral. Despite these changes the historic banks have historic integrity and contribute to the Outstanding Universal Values of the Site, being part of the reason that the Cathedral and Castle were built in this location. They are an important part of the Durham 'sense of place', though their current quality as a landscape is not high. Including them within the WHS would bring additional management issues into the site, such as woodland management and nature conservation, however it is the case

that these banks are the structure on which the Cathedral and Castle stand, and need to be carefully managed for their structural integrity.

- A4.3.8 The inner boundary of the peninsula riverbanks area is the same as the inner boundary of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan. Though incorporating the area into the WHS would increase the number of owners and issues within the site, the existence of the agreed management plan would enable these to be incorporated within the WHS Management Plan. In addition, the area is currently subject to a HLF grant application for the restoration of the terraced gardens, which would benefit the WHS both by improving the landscape quality of this area, and also by setting a precedent for heritage funding in the areas of the WHS. Including this area within the WHS would create a cohesive boundary and would aid in capturing the 'sense of place' of the peninsula within the WHS.

G. Prebends Bridge

- A4.3.9 Prebends Bridge is included within the current WHS. It is authentic to its 18th century design and has historic significance as the location of an earlier bridge to the peninsula. It contributes to the Outstanding Universal Values of the site and to the 'sense of place' of the WHS as it facilitates the famous view of the WHS rooflines reaching high above the treetops. The bridge is owned by the Cathedral and the most significant management issue is the conservation of its physical fabric, which is currently in danger of failing.

H. The River Wear

- A4.3.10 The River Wear itself is the original root of the location of the WHS, being the means by which the river gorge around the peninsula that was so attractive to the Community of St Cuthbert was created. To include the river within the WHS would incorporate significant issues of river and nature conservation management, along with the management of the weir.

I. The Outer Riverbanks Greenspace

- A4.3.11 The outer riverbank greenspace has changed through the past millennia from an open area with few trees, maintained for defensive purposes, to a wooded area providing part of the backdrop for the famous views of the WHS. As part of the reason for the original location of the WHS buildings on the peninsula and as part of the setting for the WHS, the outer riverbanks greenspace contributes to the Outstanding Universal Values of the site and to the area's sense of place. The incorporation of this area within the WHS would introduce issues of nature conservation, woodland management and the

management of disused mineshafts. The incorporation of this area would not provide a cohesive and clearly identifiable boundary for the WHS.

- A4.3.12 The outer boundary of the outer riverbanks greenspace is the same as the outer boundary of the Durham Riverbanks Management Plan. This means that the owners and managers of this area are already brought together under a single management agreement, which could be incorporated within the WHS Management Plan.

J. The Outer Riverbanks Townscape

- A4.3.13 The outer riverbanks townscape provides an important part of the setting of the WHS, and incorporates St Oswald's Church, an early medieval building with significant associations with the WHS and the origins of the Cathedral and Castle. In this way the incorporation of this area within the WHS would contribute to the historic integrity and cohesiveness of the site. The inclusion of this area would bring a large number of new owners within the bounds of the WHS, many of whom are the owners of individual domestic properties. The boundary of the area would be easy to identify on the ground, but drawing it so far away from the iconic buildings would potentially dilute the Outstanding Universal Values of the site.

A4.4 Review of Site Boundary Options

- A4.4.1 Since 1995, a number of options have been identified for the enlargement of the Durham WHS boundary by various stakeholders. Using the criteria outlined in Section A4.2, and taking into account the initial evaluation of the component areas in Section A4.3, the strengths and weaknesses of each of these options are examined in the following sections.

- A4.4.2 The seven options considered include:

Boundary Option 1 - 'The Status Quo Option'
(Components B, D and G)

Boundary Option 2 - 'The Palace Green Option'
(Components B, C, D and G)

Boundary Option 3 - 'The Western Peninsula Riverbanks Option'
(Components B, C, D, G and F (western section))

- Boundary Option 4 - 'The Plateau Option'
(Components B, C, D, E and G)
- Boundary Option 5 - 'The Peninsula Option'
(Components B, C, D, E, F and G)
- Boundary Option 6 - 'The River Gorge Option'
(Components B, C, D, E, F, G, H and I)
- Boundary Option 7 - 'The Environs Option'
(Components A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I and J)

A4.5 Boundary Option 1 - 'The Status Quo Option'

Outline

- A4.5.1 This option retains the existing WH Site boundary (see Figure A4.1). This option provides a tight boundary around the Castle, the Cathedral and its Precinct and Prebends Bridge. It also creates two distinct parts to the WHS, separated by Palace Green.

Components

- A4.5.2 This option includes the following components:

- B - The Castle
D - The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct
G - Prebends Bridge

Strengths

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site;
- Retains the focus on the two central iconic buildings

Authenticity

- The Castle and Cathedral are both strongly authentic
- Ease of Management

- Retains existing Steering Group;
- Incorporates a small number of owners and managers;
- Retains focus on built heritage conservation and 'people management' as the most pressing management issues;

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- No particular strength.

Other

- Requires no change to boundary.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- The focus on the Castle and Cathedral does not encompass all the Outstanding Universal Values of the site, excluding factors such as the distinctive topography of the peninsula and the external defences of the plateau.

Authenticity

- No weaknesses.

Ease of Management

- The boundaries do not include all significant issues affecting the Site as it excludes area F, the peninsula riverbanks, which physically support the mass of iconic buildings on the plateau top;
- The tight boundaries do not facilitate the management of the settings of the iconic buildings, and their significant relationships to features outside the boundary such as the Castle Wall.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- The link between the Cathedral Precinct and Prebends Bridge is not obvious on the ground, and it is impossible to walk from one to the other without moving outside of the WHS;
- The boundary excludes several features with strong historical relationships to the Castle and Cathedral and buildings that once formed part of Castle/Cathedral complex are excluded from the Site;
- The boundaries of the site do not follow historically contingent boundaries and are not readily identifiable on the ground;
- The WH Site is divided into three distinct parts.

Other

- The tight boundaries promote a strong 'sense of place' that is defined by the interiors of the buildings and the view from Prebends Bridge, rather than being part of a holistic experience of the buildings in their setting;
- Dramatic landscape setting divorced from the buildings.

A4.6 Boundary Option 2 - 'The Palace Green Option'

Outline

A4.6.1 This option involves enlarging the current Site boundaries to include the open space of Palace Green and the buildings that face it (see Figure A4.2). This option was originally proposed by City of Durham Council and discussed with the Steering Group.

Components

A4.6.2 This option includes the following components:

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| B | - | The Castle |
| C | - | Palace Green |
| D | - | The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct |
| G | - | Prebends Bridge |

Strengths

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses and unites the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site;
- Retains the focus on the two central iconic buildings;
- Includes the 12th century designed landscape setting for the Castle and Cathedral, which is a significant part of their common landscape setting;
- Includes buildings with a significant relationship with the Castle and Cathedral and which played an important role in the secular and spiritual power they represent, such as the Exchequer;
- Includes the pre-12th century archaeological remains that may survive beneath Palace Green.

Authenticity

- The open space of Palace Green was designed in the 12th century, and though the edging and road materials have changed through time, the Green appears to have remained authentic to its original overall form;
- Though the buildings that line the edge of Palace Green have changed through the centuries, they are historically contingent.

Ease of Management

- Palace Green is owned by the University, and is used by the Cathedral with their consent;
- There would be no significant new issue themes introduced to the management of the Site through incorporating this area;
- Incorporating Palace Green would enable issues affecting the setting and management of the Cathedral and Castle, such as parking and clear routes of access for emergency vehicles, to be directly addressed by the Management Plan.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Historically this area has strong connections with the Cathedral and Castle, forming an administrative heart for the complex, and for the exercise of the secular power of the Prince Bishops;
- The inclusion of this area would create a more cohesive and readily identifiable boundary for the World Heritage Site.

Other

- The inclusion of Palace Green would facilitate the experience of a more encompassing 'sense of place' for the WHS than is currently afforded, including the exterior as well as interior experience.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- The focus on the Castle and Cathedral united by Palace Green does not encompass all the Outstanding Universal Values of the site, excluding factors such as the distinctive topography of the peninsula and the external defences of the plateau.

Authenticity

- There are some modern buildings contained within the component areas of Palace Green, though these would appear to be sensitive to the historic environment and do not present significant weaknesses.

Ease of Management

- The boundaries do not include all significant issues affecting the Site as it excludes area F, the peninsula riverbanks, which physically support the mass of iconic buildings on the plateau top;
- The tight boundaries do not facilitate the management of the settings of the iconic buildings, and their significant relationships to features outside the boundary such as the Castle Wall.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- The link between the Cathedral Precinct and Prebends Bridge is not obvious on the ground, and it is impossible to walk from one to the other without moving outside of the WHS;
- The boundaries exclude several features with strong historical relationships to the Castle and Cathedral and buildings that once formed part of Castle/Cathedral complex are excluded from the Site;
- Largely retains the narrow boundary around the Cathedral and the Castle.

Other

- Dramatic landscape setting divorced from buildings.

A4.7 Boundary Option 3 - 'The Western Peninsula Riverbanks Option'

Outline

A4.7.1 This option includes the area of the riverbank that historically lies within the Cathedral Precinct (see Figure A4.3). This option was originally proposed by ICOMOS-UK in the 1995 *UK World Heritage Sites Monitoring Report*.

Components

A4.7.2 This option includes the following components:

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| B | - | The Castle |
| C | - | Palace Green |
| D | - | The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct |

- F - The Peninsula Riverbanks (between Framwellgate and Prebends Bridges)
- G - Prebends Bridge

Strengths

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses and unites the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site;
- Retains the focus on the two central iconic buildings;
- Includes the 12th century designed landscape setting for the Castle and Cathedral, which is a significant part of their common landscape setting;
- Includes buildings with a significant relationship with the Castle and Cathedral and which played an important role in the secular and spiritual power they represent, such as the Exchequer;
- Includes the pre-12th century archaeological remains that may survive beneath Palace Green;
- Includes part of the defensive banks of the peninsula.

Authenticity

- The open space of Palace Green was designed in the 12th century, and though the edging and road materials have changed through time, the Green appears to have remained authentic to its original overall form;
- Though the buildings that line the edge of Palace Green have changed through the centuries, they are historically contingent;
- The Fulling Mill at the base of the banks is the most recent survivor of a series of mill buildings in this location.

Ease of Management

- Palace Green is owned by the University, and is used by the Cathedral with their consent;
- Incorporating Palace Green would enable issues affecting the setting and management of the Cathedral and Castle, such as parking and clear routes of access for emergency vehicles, to be directly addressed by the Management Plan;
- Though there are apparently several owners of these riverbanks, these are already united within the Riverbanks Management Plan;
- Incorporating the section of the riverbank below the Cathedral would facilitate the management and monitoring of geological and other structural issues that may affect the cathedral above, such as woodland management to prevent landslides.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Historically Palace Green has strong connections with the Cathedral and Castle, forming an administrative heart for the complex, and for the exercise of the secular power of the Prince Bishops;
- Historically the riverbanks were a significant part of the reasons for the Community of St Cuthbert settling at the peninsula, and formed an important part of the defences of the site;
- The inclusion of Palace Green would create a more cohesive and readily identifiable boundary for the World Heritage Site.

Other

- The inclusion of Palace Green and the western section of the riverbanks would facilitate the experience of a more encompassing 'sense of place' for the WHS than is currently afforded, including the exterior as well as interior experience.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- This combination of components does not encompass all the Outstanding Universal Values of the site, as it excludes the eastern part of the plateau and the rest of the distinctive topography of the peninsula.

Authenticity

- There are some modern buildings contained within the component areas of Palace Green, though these would appear to be sensitive to the historic environment and do not present significant weaknesses.

Ease of Management

- The tight boundaries do not facilitate the management of the settings of the iconic buildings, and their significant relationships to features outside the boundary such as the Castle Wall;
- There are apparently several owners of the riverbanks, though these are already united within the Riverbanks Management Plan.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- The boundaries exclude several features with strong historical relationships to the Castle and Cathedral and buildings that once formed part of Castle/Cathedral complex are excluded from the Site;

- Largely retains the narrow boundary around the Cathedral and the Castle.

Other

- Though part of the dramatic setting of the buildings is included within the boundary, it is not included in its entirety;
- The WHS boundary would not be readily comprehensible on the ground.

A4.8 Boundary Option 4 - 'The Plateau Option'

Outline

A4.8.1 The option includes the current WHS, Palace Green and the Bailey (see Figure A4.4). The boundary for this option runs around the line of the old Castle Walls. This option emphasises the unity of the Cathedral and Castle, and the combined secular and spiritual power that they represent. This option was originally proposed by City of Durham Council.

Components

A4.8.2 This option includes the following components:

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| B | - | The Castle |
| C | - | Palace Green |
| D | - | The Cathedral And Cathedral Precinct |
| E | - | The Bailey |
| G | - | Prebends Bridge |

Strengths

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site and unites the Castle and Cathedral and Prebends Bridge within a single boundary;
- Emphasises the unity of the defended Cathedral and Castle, and the combined secular and spiritual power that they represent;
- Combines the entire defended plateau site within the WHS, emphasising the imposing and extensive nature of the complex and including all its domestic, administrative, religious, palatial and defensive buildings within its bounds;
- Includes the designed landscape setting of Palace Green at the heart of the WHS;

- Includes the significant archaeological deposits contained within the Castle Walls.

Authenticity

- Though this option does contain a small number of modern buildings within its bounds, for the most part these are sensitive to the historic environment within which they sit;
- Palace Green and the street layout of the Bailey date from the medieval period;
- Though most of the medieval buildings within the Bailey have been refaced during the Georgian period, the medieval fabric is largely retained within the structure of the buildings, and the refronting itself is historically contingent.

Ease of Management

- Palace Green is owned by the University, and is used by the Cathedral with their consent, whilst most, though not all, of the Bailey is owned by the current WHS owners and managers;
- Incorporating Palace Green and the Bailey would enable issues affecting the setting and management of the Cathedral and Castle, such as parking and clear routes of access for emergency vehicles, to be directly addressed by the Management Plan;
- There would appear to be no significant additional themes of issues that would need to be addressed by including these areas;

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Follows the historic line of the Castle Walls and unites the entire defended plateau site within the WHS boundary;
- Includes the 12th century Palace Green with its later administrative buildings;
- Includes the Georgian refronted medieval domestic buildings of the Bailey and the medieval street layout;
- Unites the Castle and Cathedral with the buildings that once formed part of their defended complex.

Other

- Provides an easily identifiable boundary.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- This combination of components does not encompass all the Outstanding Universal Values of the site, as it excludes the distinctive topography and defensive function of the peninsula.

Authenticity

- There are some modern buildings contained within the component areas of the Bailey and Palace Green, though these would appear to be sensitive to the historic environment and do not present significant weaknesses.

Ease of Management

- The WHS boundary would not facilitate the management of the woodland setting of the site and the geological and structural issues related to the peninsula riverbank on which the plateau sits;

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- The boundary excludes the defensive peninsula riverbanks, which are a significant reason for the attractiveness of the Site to the Community of St Cuthbert;

Other

- The dramatic setting of the buildings is not included within the WH Site.

A4.9 Boundary Option 5 - 'The Peninsula Option'

Outline

A4.9.1 This option includes the entire peninsula down to the inner banks of the River Wear (see Figure A4.5). It unites the existing WHS with its surrounding defended site and with the dramatic peninsula landscape of which it is part. This option was originally proposed by ICOMOS-UK in the 1995 *UK World Heritage Sites Monitoring Report*.

Components

A4.9.2 This option includes the following components:

- B - The Castle
- C - Palace Green

D	-	The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct
E	-	The Bailey
F	-	The Peninsula Riverbanks
G	-	Prebends Bridge

Strengths

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site and unites the Castle and Cathedral and Prebends Bridge within a single boundary;
- Emphasises the unity of the defended Cathedral and Castle, and the combined secular and spiritual power that they represent;
- Includes the steep riverbanks that were part of the reason for the attractiveness of the site to the Community of St Cuthbert;
- Includes the entire peninsula site within the WHS, emphasising the imposing and extensive nature of the complex set on its raised plateau with steep valley sides.
- Includes all the domestic, administrative, religious, palatial and defensive buildings of the Cathedral and castle complex within its bounds;
- Includes the medieval designed landscape of Palace Green at the heart of the WHS;
- Includes the significant archaeological deposits contained within the Castle Walls and the midden deposits down and beneath the riverbanks.

Authenticity

- Though this option does contain a small number of modern buildings within its bounds, for the most part these are sensitive to the historic environment within which they sit;
- Palace Green and the street layout of the Bailey date from the medieval period;
- Though most of the medieval buildings within the Bailey have been refaced during the Georgian period, the medieval fabric is largely retained within the structure of the buildings, and the refronting itself is historically contingent.

Ease of Management

- Unites the plateau top with the steep valley sides on which they site, facilitating the management of these riverbanks to ensure structural stability and prevent landslide;
- Palace Green is owned by the University, and is used by the Cathedral with their consent, whilst most, though not all, of the Bailey is owned by the current WHS owners and managers;

- Incorporating Palace Green and the Bailey would enable issues affecting the setting and management of the Cathedral and Castle, such as parking and clear routes of access for emergency vehicles, to be directly addressed by the Management Plan;
- The Riverbanks Management Plan unites the owners and managers of the peninsula riverbanks within an agreed management framework.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Includes the 12th century Palace Green with its later administrative buildings;
- Includes the Georgian refronted medieval domestic buildings of the Bailey and the medieval street layout;
- Unites the Castle and Cathedral with the buildings that once formed part of their defended complex.
- Includes a number of historically significant features, such as:
 - The extant and non-extant bridges, ferry and fording places that linked the peninsula to the other side of the river;
 - The extant and non-extant mills that belonged to the Bishop and Priory;
 - The medieval (maintained as open hillside for defensive purposes) and post-medieval (gardens and walks) designed landscapes and associated buildings that lined the inner riverbank;
 - The inner riverbank archaeological occupational deposits (largely middens and cesspits) associated with the Cathedral, Priory and Castle;
- Includes part of the romantic and beautiful landscape setting of the Castle and Cathedral.

Other

- Provides an easily identifiable and manageable boundary.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Includes only half of the landscape setting of the Cathedral and the Castle;

Authenticity

- There are some modern buildings contained within the component areas of the Bailey and Palace Green, though these would appear to be sensitive to the historic environment and do not present significant weaknesses.
- Some of the university boathouses are of modern construction and are not particularly sensitive to the historic environment, largely due to their current condition.

Ease of Management

- Would include several new landowners within the WH Site, who would need to be consulted about the WHS and to be sympathetic to the WHS aims and objectives, though these are already united within the Riverbanks Management Plan;
- Would introduce a number of new management themes to the WHS, including the management of nature conservation values and woodland management, though an agreed approach to these issues is already covered in the Riverbanks Management Plan.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- This option contains only half of the river gorge that attracted the Community of St Cuthbert.

Other

- The Riverbanks are not currently visually of World Heritage Site quality, though this is being addressed with the Riverbanks Management Plan.

A4.10 Boundary Option 6 - 'The River Gorge Option'

Option

A4.10.1 This option includes the existing WHS, Palace Green, the Bailey, the River Wear and both sides of the river gorge (see Figure A4.6). This option utilises the boundary of the Riverbanks Management Plan as its outer boundary. It unites the existing WHS with its surrounding defended site and with the dramatic peninsula landscape of which it is part. This option was originally proposed by ICOMOS-UK in the 1995 *UK World Heritage Sites Monitoring Report*.

Components

A4.10.2 This option includes the following components:

B	-	The Castle
C	-	Palace Green
D	-	The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct
E	-	The Bailey
F	-	The Peninsula Riverbanks
G	-	Prebends Bridge
H	-	The River Wear

Strengths

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site and unites the Castle and Cathedral and Prebends Bridge within a single boundary;
- Emphasises the unity of the defended Cathedral and Castle, and the combined secular and spiritual power that they represent;
- Includes the river gorge that was an integral part of the reason for the attractiveness of the site to the Community of St Cuthbert;
- Includes the entire peninsula site within the WHS, emphasising the imposing and extensive nature of the complex set on its raised plateau with steep valley sides.
- Includes all the domestic, administrative, religious, palatial and defensive buildings of the Cathedral and Castle complex within its bounds;
- Includes the medieval designed landscape of Palace Green at the heart of the WHS;
- Includes the significant archaeological deposits contained within the Castle Walls, the midden deposits down and beneath the inner riverbanks and the quarries and mineshafts of the outer riverbanks.

Authenticity

- Though this option does contain a small number of modern buildings within its bounds, for the most part these are sensitive to the historic environment within which they sit;
- Palace Green and the street layout of the Bailey date from the medieval period;
- Though most of the medieval buildings within the Bailey have been refaced during the Georgian period, the medieval fabric is largely retained within the structure of the buildings, and the refronting itself is historically contingent.

Ease of Management

- Unites the plateau top with the steep valley sides on which it sits, facilitating the management of these riverbanks to ensure structural stability and prevent landslide;
- Palace Green is owned by the University, and is used by the Cathedral with their consent, whilst most, though not all, of the Bailey is owned by the current WHS owners and managers;
- Incorporating Palace Green and the Bailey would enable issues affecting the setting and management of the Cathedral and Castle, such as parking and clear routes of access for emergency vehicles, to be directly addressed by the Management Plan;

- The Riverbanks Management Plan unites the owners and managers of the peninsula riverbanks within an agreed management framework.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Includes the 12th century Palace Green with its later administrative buildings;
- Includes the Georgian refronted medieval domestic buildings of the Bailey and the medieval street layout;
- Unites the Castle and Cathedral with the buildings that once formed part of their defended complex.
- Includes a number of historically significant features, such as:
 - The extant and non-extant bridges, ferry and fording places that linked the peninsula to the other side of the river;
 - The extant and non-extant mills that belonged to the Bishop and Priory;
 - The medieval (maintained as open hillside for defensive purposes) and post-medieval (gardens and walks) designed landscapes and associated buildings that lined the inner riverbank;
 - The inner riverbank archaeological occupational deposits (largely middens and cesspits) associated with the Cathedral, Priory and Castle;
 - The outer riverbank quarries and disused mine shafts;
 - Reuniting the buildings on the peninsula with the inner and outer riverbank quarries from which some of their stone was obtained;
 - The romantic and beautiful landscape setting of the peninsula.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Potentially dilutes the Outstanding Universal Values of the site.

Authenticity

- There are some modern buildings contained within the component areas of the Bailey and Palace Green, though these would appear to be sensitive to the historic environment and do not present significant weaknesses.
- Some of the University and independent College boathouses are of modern construction and are not particularly sensitive to the historic environment, largely due to their current condition.

Ease of Management

- Would include several new landowners within the WH Site, who would need to be consulted about the WHS and to be sympathetic to the WHS aims and objectives, though these are already united within the Riverbanks Management Plan;
- Would introduce a number of new management themes to the WHS, including the management of nature conservation values, woodland management and the management of disused mine shafts, though an agreed approach to these issues is already covered in the Riverbanks Management Plan.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- No significant weaknesses.

Other

- The Riverbanks are not currently visually of World Heritage Site quality, though this is being addressed with the Riverbanks Management Plan;
- The gorge edge is not an easily identifiable boundary.

A4.11 Boundary Option 7 - 'The Environs Option'

Outline

A4.11.1 This option proposes that the entire area defined as the 'immediate environs' of the WHS (see Figure 3) is included within the Site boundary (see Figure A4.7). This area includes the Market Place and St Nicholas' Church within the Medieval Town Core. The inclusion of the town (excluding the outer riverbanks townscape) was originally proposed by City of Durham Council.

Components

A4.11.2 This option includes the following components:

- | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| A | - | The Medieval Town Core |
| B | - | The Castle |
| C | - | Palace Green |
| D | - | The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct |
| E | - | The Bailey |
| F | - | The Peninsula Riverbanks |
| G | - | Prebends Bridge |

H	-	The River Wear
I	-	The Outer Riverbanks Greenspace
J	-	The Outer Riverbanks Townscape

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Encompasses the two key iconic architectural elements of the Site and unites the Castle and Cathedral and Prebends Bridge within a single boundary;
- Emphasises the unity of the defended Cathedral and Castle, and the combined secular and spiritual power that they represent;
- Includes the river gorge that was an integral part of the reason for the attractiveness of the site to the Community of St Cuthbert;
- Includes the entire peninsula site within the WHS, emphasising the imposing and extensive nature of the complex set on its raised plateau with steep valley sides.
- Includes all the domestic, administrative, religious, palatial and defensive buildings of the Cathedral and castle complex within its bounds;
- Includes the medieval designed landscape of Palace Green at the heart of the WHS;
- Includes the significant archaeological deposits contained within the Castle Walls, the midden deposits down and beneath the inner riverbanks and the quarries and mineshafts of the outer riverbanks;
- Includes the medieval town that grew from the castle and cathedral complex, and which served the pilgrims to the Cathedral and the shrines it contains.

Authenticity

- Palace Green and the street layout of the Bailey date from the medieval period;
- Though most of the medieval buildings within the Bailey have been refaced during the Georgian period, the medieval fabric is largely retained within the structure of the buildings, and the refronting itself is historically contingent;
- Some of the medieval buildings within the medieval town core survive behind the more recent facades.

Ease of Management

- Unites the plateau top with the steep valley sides on which it sits, facilitating the management of these riverbanks to ensure structural stability and prevent landslide;
- Palace Green is owned by the University, and is used by the Cathedral with their consent, whilst most, though not all, of the Bailey is owned by the current WHS owners and managers;

- Incorporating Palace Green and the Bailey would enable issues affecting the setting and management of the Cathedral and Castle, such as parking and clear routes of access for emergency vehicles, to be directly addressed by the Management Plan;
- The Riverbanks Management Plan unites the owners and managers of the peninsula riverbanks within an agreed management framework;
- Incorporating the Outer Riverbanks townscape would facilitate the management of the setting this area provides for the peninsula.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Includes the 12th century Palace Green with its later administrative buildings;
- Includes the Georgian refronted medieval domestic buildings of the Bailey and the medieval street layout;
- Unites the Castle and Cathedral with the buildings that once formed part of their defended complex.
- Includes a number of historically significant features, such as:
 - The extant and non-extant bridges, ferry and fording places that linked the peninsula to the other side of the river;
 - The extant and non-extant mills that belonged to the Bishop and Priory;
 - The medieval (maintained as open hillside for defensive purposes) and post-medieval (gardens and walks) designed landscapes and associated buildings that lined the inner riverbank;
 - The inner riverbank archaeological occupational deposits (largely middens and cesspits) associated with the Cathedral, Priory and Castle;
 - The outer riverbank quarries and disused mine shafts;
 - Reuniting the buildings on the peninsula with the inner and outer riverbank quarries from which some of their stone was obtained;
 - The romantic and beautiful landscape setting of the peninsula.

Weaknesses

Contribution to Outstanding Universal Value

- Would dilute the Outstanding Universal Values of the site.

Authenticity

- There are strong issues with authenticity by including the outer riverbanks townscape and the medieval town core within the WHS. Whilst both have their roots in medieval layouts, both areas

have experienced dramatic change during the past 200 years. These areas would not fulfil the criteria of authenticity required for a WHS.

Ease of Management

- Would include a large number of new landowners within the WH Site, who would need to be consulted about the WHS and to be sympathetic to the WHS aims and objectives;
- Would introduce a large number of new management themes to the WHS, including the management of nature conservation values, woodland management and the management of disused mine shafts, though an agreed approach to these issues is already covered in the Riverbanks Management Plan.

Historical Integrity and Cohesiveness

- Whilst there are strong links between the peninsula and the church of St Oswald on the outer riverbanks, and strong links between the medieval town and the Castle and Cathedral complex, these links are not strong enough to be able to argue a case for their inclusion within the WHS.

Other

- In isolation neither the medieval town core nor the outer riverbanks townscape would be considered to be of WHS status.

A4.12 The Proposed Inclusion of Palace Green within the WHS (Option 2)

A4.12.1 The Durham Castle and Cathedral WHS has been criticised for having a site boundary that is drawn too tightly around its key buildings.

A4.12.2 Based on the information included in the above discussion, and on discussions held within the Steering Group, it has been decided to propose to the State Party that the Durham Cathedral and Castle WHS is recommended to the World Heritage Committee for expansion, to include the open space and buildings of Palace Green. Palace Green is an integral part of the medieval fortified Castle and Cathedral complex, and was once the formal processional route between the two buildings. It was created in the 12th century as a designed landscape, for the purpose of uniting the two buildings within a single design.

A4.12.2 This proposed expansion would reunite the Castle, the home of the Bishops, with the Cathedral, their church, within a single WHS boundary whilst also including part of the historic designed setting of the buildings. It would improve the ease of management of the Site, through enabling the inclusion of the management issues faced by Palace Green within the WHS Management Plan, such as the issue of

providing adequate emergency vehicle access to the main buildings when Palace Green is used for parking. The inclusion of Palace Green would improve the historic integrity and cohesiveness of the Site and would facilitate the experience of a more encompassing 'sense of place' for the WHS than is currently afforded, including the exterior as well as the interior experience of the key buildings.

A4.12.3 The local importance attached to the expansion of the WHS is reflected in its inclusion as a policy in the City of Durham Local Plan (policy E4).

A4.13 Future Review of the Site Boundary

A4.13.1 Good practice dictates that the boundary of a WHS is kept under regular review, as part of the Management Plan review process and as part of the Periodic Reporting process. It is important that the proposed inclusion of Palace Green, should it be implemented, is reviewed during the 2010 review of the Management Plan, to ensure that the expansion of the Site is successful. This review process will also need to consider if, based on the experience of Palace Green, further expansion is advisable.

APPENDIX 5: SCHEDULE OF DESIGNATED ASSETS IN THE WH SITE

A5.1 Introduction

A5.1.1 The following Appendix lists the Listed Buildings and Scheduled Monuments contained within the Inscribed WH Site, and the Listed Buildings within the proposed addition to the WH Site (Palace Green). There are no Scheduled Monuments within the proposed extension. The locations of the Listed Buildings and Scheduled Monuments on the Durham Peninsula are shown on Figure 2.7.

A.5.2 Listed Buildings within the Inscribed Durham Cathedral and Castle WH Site (1986 Boundary)

Property/Street name	Grade
The Cathedral College	
The Gatehouse (formally listed as the Priory Gateway)	I
Nos. 1 and 2 The College (formally listed as garage the Priory Gateway to south and cottage adjoining)	II
No. 3 The College (formally listed as the house adjoining the cottage)	II
No. 4 The College (formally listed as part of the house adjoining the cottage)	II
No. 5 The College (University Library)	II
No. 6a The College	II
No. 6 The College	II*
No. 7 The College	II*
No. 8 The College	I
No. 9 The College (Chorister School)	I
Wall with archway in front of No. 9	II
Wall south of No. 9 (Chorister School)	II
No. 10 The College (Chorister School)	II*
No. 11 The College (Chorister School)	II
Water hydrant north of No. 12	II

No. 12 - 15 The College	I
Walls attached to No. 12-15	I
Walls and piers attached to No. 12	II
Gas lamp in front of garden wall at No. 12	II
Garages north of No. 15	II
Priory prison and former stables north of No. 15 (now public W.C.)	I
Priors Kitchen (now shop)	I
The Deanery	I
Wall south of the Deanery	II
No. 16 The College	II*
No. 16a The College	II*
Staff rooms and store rooms	II
Timber loft	II
Maintenance shed, workshops, arch attached to north	II
No. 17 The College and wall attached	II
Chapter Clerk's Office and Chapter Room	II
Conduit House	II
Water pump	II
Moatside Lane	
Castle wall around motte on west, north and east sides	I
Castle terrace wall	I
North Bailey	
Wall with entrance arch and mounting block, opposite to Nos. 19-22a (consecutive) North Bailey	II
War Memorial to east of Cathedral	II
Palace Green	
Castle gatehouse, entrance gateway, side walls and front walls	I
The Castle: west range	I

The Castle: north range	I
The Keep, The Castle (University College)	I
Pemberton Buildings	II
Cathedral Church of Christ and St. Mary the Virgin	I
Cathedral cloister east range	I
Cathedral cloister south range	I
Cathedral cloister west range	I
Lavatorium in centre of cloister garth	I
South Bailey	
Water Gate	II*
Prebends Bridge	I
Cathedral precinct wall	II
Wall to west of No. 13 South Bailey	I
No. 13 South Bailey	II
Street wall, gates and railings north of No. 13 South Bailey	II
No. 16 South Bailey	II
Church of St Mary the Less	II
Garage and boundary wall west and north of Church of St Mary the Less	II

A5.3 Listed Buildings in the Proposed Palace Green WH Site Extension

Property/Street name	Grade
Palace Green	
D.L.I South African War Memorial	II
Tomb of Dean Kitchen	II
Old Grammar School (University Music Dept)	II*
Music Library	II

University Library	II
Cosins Library	II*
Former Exchequer Building, now University Library	I
University College Masters House	II
Bishop Cosins Hall	II*
Former Grammar School (University Police Offices)	II
Almshouses Restaurant	II
Former writing and plainsong school	II
Pemberton Buildings	II
Abbey House (Department of Theology)	II
Owengate	
No. 1 Owengate	II
No. 2 Owengate	II
No. 3 Owengate	II
No. 4 Owengate	II
No. 5 Owengate	II
No. 6 Owengate	II
No. 7 Owengate (Bishop Cosin's Almshouses)	II
No. 9 Owengate (rear University College Masters House)	II

A5.4 Scheduled Monuments within the Inscribed WH Site

Water Gate
Prebends Bridge

APPENDIX 6: CASTLE AND CATHEDRAL TIMELINE

DYNASTY	MONARCH	BISHOP(S) OF DURHAM	EVENT
SAXON	Ethelred the Unready (979-1016)	Aldhun	995 The remains of St Cuthbert reach Durham. 998 The Ecclesia Major is dedicated.
	Edmund Ironside (1016)	Aldhun	
DANISH	Canute (1016-1035)	Aldhun Eadmund	1022 The remains of St Bede are brought to Durham
	Harold Harefoot (1035-1040)	Eadmund	
	Hardecanute (1040-1042)	Eadmund Eadred	
SAXON (Restored)	Edward the Confessor (1042-1066)	Aethelric Aethelwin	
	Harold (1066)	Aethelwin	
NORMAN	William the Conqueror (1066-1087)	Aethelwin Walcher William of St Calais	1072 The King orders the construction of Durham Castle. c.1080-90 The Norman Chapel within the Castle is completed. 1081 The Bishops of Durham become Prince Bishops. 1083 The Benedictine Monastery is founded.

	William II (1087-1100)	William of St Calais Ranulf Flambard	1093 The building of the present Cathedral begins.
	Henry I (1100-1135)	Ranulf Flambard Geoffrey Rufus	1104 The Choir is completed and the remains St Cuthbert are moved to a shrine at the east end of the Cathedral. 1110-20 The Cathedral's North Transept and South Transept are finished. 1133 The Cathedral Nave is completed.
	Stephen (1135-1154)	Geoffrey Rufus William of Ste. Barbe Hugh de Puiset	c.1133-41 The original Chapter House of the Monastery is rebuilt. c.1144-52 The monastic dormitory rebuilt in the west range
PLANTAGENET	Henry II (1154-1189)	Hugh de Puiset	c. 1153-65 The Castle's Norman Gallery is constructed. c.1165-75 The Cathedral's Galilee Chapel is constructed c.1175-80 The Sanctuary Knocker is added to the North Door of the Cathedral.
	Richard I (1189-1199)	Hugh de Puiset Philip of Pointon	
	John (1199-1216)	Philip of Pointon Richard Marsh	

	Henry III (1216-1272)	Richard Marsh Richard Poore Nicholas Farnham Walter Kirkham Robert of Stichill Robert of Holy Island	Easrly 13th Century The Cathedral's West Towers are completed. c. 1258-1290 The original Central Tower of the Cathedral is constructed.
	Edward I (1272-1307)	Robert of Holy Island Anthony Bek	c. 1242-80 The Cathedral's Chapel of the Nine Altars is constructed. c. 1284-1311 Construction of the Castle's Great Hall undertaken by Bishop Bek
	Edward II (1307-1327)	Anthony Bek Richard of Kellawe Lewis de Beaumont	
	Edward III (1327-1377)	Lewis de Beaumont Richard of Bury Thomas Hatfield	1346 A large Scottish army is defeated at the Battle of Neville's Cross. 1370 The remains of St Bede are moved to the Galilee Chapel. 1366-74 The Great Kitchen of the Monastery is constructed. c. 1373-81 The Bishop's Throne and Hatfield Chantry are installed in the Cathedral.
	Richard II (1377-1399)	Thomas Hatfield John Fordham Walter Skirlaw	1380 The Cathedral's Neville Screen is consecrated.
LANCASTER	Henry IV (1399-1413)	Walter Skirlaw Thomas Langley	1398-1404 The Monks' Dormitory in the Monastery is constructed.
	Henry V (1413-1422)	Thomas Langley	c.1417 The Neville Chantry is created in the Cathedral.

	Henry VI (1422-1461)	Thomas Langley Robert Neville Lawrence Booth	1429 The Cathedral's Central Tower is severely damaged by lightning on the eve of Corpus Christi. 1459 Cathedral's Central Tower again damaged by lightning. Rebuilding begins.
YORK	Edward IV (1461-1483)	Lawrence Booth William Dudley	
	Edward V (1483)	William Dudley	
	Richard III (1483-1485)	John Sherwood	
TUDOR	Henry VII (1485-1509)	John Sherwood Richard Foxe William Senhouse Christopher Banbridge	c.1490 Rebuilding of the Cathedral's Central Tower is completed. 1499 - 1501 The Great Hall of the Castle is shortened and the Buttery and Kitchen are built.
	Henry VIII (1509-1547)	Thomas Ruthall Thomas Wolsey Cuthbert Tunstall	c.1494-1519 Prior Castell's Clock is installed in the South Transept. 1540 The King's commissioners close down the Monastery and dismantle the shrines of St Cuthbert and St Bede. 1541 The King re-founds the Cathedral as the Cathedral Church of Christ and Blessed Mary the Virgin. 1545 Bishop Tunstall's Chapel and Gallery in the Castle are completed.
	Edward VI (1547-1553)	Cuthbert Tunstall	

	Mary I (1553-1558)	Cuthbert Tunstall	
	Elizabeth I (1558-1603)	Cuthbert Tunstall James Pilkington Richard Barnes Matthew Hutton Tobias Matthew	
STUART	James I (1603-1625)	Tobias Matthew William James Richard Neile	
	Charles I (1625-1649)	Richard Neile George Montaigne John Hutton Thomas Morton	1640 A Scottish army occupies Durham and uses the Cathedral as a barracks.
COMMONWEALTH	Council of State (1649-1653)	Thomas Morton	1650 Around 3,000 Scots prisoners are imprisoned in the Cathedral by Cromwell after the Battle of Dunbar.
	Oliver Cromwell (1653-1658)	Thomas Morton	1658 Oliver Cromwell intends to found a University at Durham but dies before this is accomplished.
	Richard Cromwell (1658-1659)	Thomas Morton	

STUART (Restored)	Charles II (1660-1685)	John Cosin Nathaniel, Lord Crewe	1662 Bishop Cosin's Black Staircase is built in the Castle. 1663 A new Font Canopy is erected in the Nave of the Cathedral. 1660-1665 A new Screen and Choir Stalls are installed in the Cathedral. post 1665-post 1684 Dean Sudbury converts the Monastic Refectory into a library.
	James II (1685-1688)	Nathaniel, Lord Crewe	1686 Father Smith's Organ is installed in the Cathedral.
	William III & Mary II (1689-1702)	Nathaniel, Lord Crewe	
	Anne (1702-1714)	Nathaniel, Lord Crewe	
HANOVER	George I (1714-1727)	Nathaniel, Lord Crewe William Talbot	
	George II (1727-1760)	William Talbot Edward Chandler Joseph Butler Richard Trevor	
	George III (1760-1820)	Richard Trevor John Egerton Thomas Thurlow Shute Barrington	1796 The Norman Chapter House of the Monastery is partially demolished.
	George IV (1820-1830)	Shute Barrington William Van Mildert	1827 The tomb of St Cuthbert is reopened and several items, including his pectoral cross, are removed.

	William IV (1830-1837)	William Van Mildert Edward Maltby	<p>1831 The tomb of St Bede is reopened and a gilded iron finger ring is removed.</p> <p>1832 Bishop Van Mildert founds the University of Durham.</p> <p>1836 Bishop Van Mildert - the last of the Prince Bishops - dies.</p>
SAXE-COBURG	Victoria (1837-1901)	Edward Maltby Charles Longley Henry Villiers Charles Baring Joseph Lightfoot Brooke Westcott	<p>1837 The University of Durham moves into the Castle.</p> <p>1840 The ruined Castle Keep is rebuilt to house University students.</p> <p>1867 The 'Jesse' Window is installed at the west end of the Nave of the Cathedral.</p> <p>1869 The present 'Te Deum' Window in the South Transept is inaugurated.</p> <p>1876 A new Choir Screen and alabaster Pulpit are erected by Sir George Gilbert Scott. The present 'Father Willis' Organ is installed.</p> <p>1895 The Chapter House of the Monastery is restored as a memorial to Bishop Lightfoot.</p> <p>1899 The tomb of St Cuthbert is reopened and his remains are examined.</p>
	Edward VII (1901-1910)	Handley Moule	

WINDSOR	George V (1910-1936)	Handley Moule Herbert Henson	1919 Consecration of the Durham Light Infantry Chapel in the South Transept.
	Edward VIII (1936)	Herbert Henson	
	George VI (1936-1952)	Herbert Henson Alwyn Williams	1942 The Cathedral escapes destruction by German bombers due to being hidden by mist. 1947 The Coal Miners' Memorial is installed in the Cathedral.
	Elizabeth II (1952- Present)	Michael Ramsey Maurice Harland Ian Ramsey John Habgood David Jenkins Michael Turnbull Tom Wright	1952 The Castle's Norman Chapel is restored and reopened. 1980 The Cathedral's ten bells are rehung in a steel frame. 1984 The 'Daily Bread' Window is installed in the Nave of the Cathedral. 1993 The American Friends' Window is placed in the Galilee Chapel. 1997 The Cathedral's Millennium Window, in the South Choir Aisle, is consecrated.

(After 'Millennium Timeline' www.dur.ac.uk, with some alterations)

APPENDIX 7: THE VISITOR AND MARKETING STRATEGY

A7.1 This strategy could cover five principal areas:

- Promotion and Marketing of the WH Site;
- Interpretation of the WH Site;
- Enhancing Visitor Experience;
- Maximising Benefits;
- Monitoring Visitor Impacts and Trends.

A7.2 The Strategy would need to be developed by all of the relevant parties to ensure its success, and its development could be led by Durham County Council's Tourism department, in consultation with the Steering Group. Key participants in its development could include:

- ONE NorthEast Development Agency;
- Tourism Network NorthEast;
- England's North Country;
- Durham County Council;
- City of Durham Council;
- Durham Cathedral;
- Durham Castle;
- St Johns College.

A7.3 In order to assess how to improve visitor revenues, it is important to understand the current situation. Neither the Cathedral nor the Castle has access to the profile of their current visitors, making it difficult to determine how successful the sites currently are at converting visitors to the area into visitors to the WH Site. In addition, little information is available on how much the visitors spend during their stay within the WH Site, other than the entry fee for the Castle tour.

A7.4 Going forward into the future, there will be a requirement to improve the WHS's understanding of its visitors to better direct both marketing and the development of the visitor experience. Similarly, better information on how much visitors are currently spending when they visit the WH Site would enable a more informed review of which areas of spend could be improved upon. The City Council's Tourism and Conference Office is working with New College to improve the information available on the type and origin of visitors to the WH Site and to the City. Further development of this is required to fill the current gaps in visitor understanding, and could be undertaken under the umbrella of the proposed

Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy. Of particular importance is the need to define the audiences that use the WH Site, and how they are currently served. This research would not only ensure that marketing can be appropriately targeted, but would also facilitate the development of visitor facilities that are geared towards the needs of the key audiences.

A7.5 The Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy would also need to identify and consider in detail how to monitor and mitigate the potential impacts of visitors on the WH Site. It would need to design and implement regular monitoring of issues such as erosion of the fabric of the WH Site and the impact of visitors on the tranquillity, character and primary uses of the WH Site, as well as impacts on the Outstanding Universal Value of the WH Site and its broader significances. Any issues raised during this regular monitoring would need to be addressed by the WH Site managers, in a coordinated manner and within the context of the WH Site Management Plan and the WH Site Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy.

A7.6 Within the context of the Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy it would be important to address the current and future issues at the WH Site with regard to visitor facilities, movement, conservation and access. Key issues requiring urgent attention include:

- Enhancing the quality of visitor service provided by all businesses in contact with the visitor within the WH Site, to include the co-ordination of opening hours;
- Enhancing visitor orientation at points that visitors transfer from passenger to pedestrian, linking to the Durham Partnership studies and to the relocated Tourism Information Centre;
- Enhancing visitor orientation around the WH Site itself and facilitating the WH Site experience for the visitor;
- Enhancing interpretation of the WH Site, to ensure that visitors are presented with an introduction to the history of the WH Site, in addition to improving the quality of interpretation within each of the WHS attractions;
- Ensuring that the WH Site's visitors do not impact on the conservation of the WH Site, its Outstanding Universal Value and its broader significances.

A7.7 A significant component of the Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy would need to be focussed on maximising benefits for the wider city communities and local and regional attractions. This covers two principal areas:

- The provision of facilities that are relevant to visitors and local communities alike; and
- Ensuring that maximum economic benefit is achieved for minimal disruption.

- A7.8 The latter could in part be achieved through effective cross-promotion and the establishment of formal organisational links between attractions, within and without the WH Site, helping to spread the value of tourists further afield and extend their stay in the Durham area. In regard to the first point, all future and current attractions ideally would continue to ensure that they remain relevant to the local communities. There is a need to balance the needs of the Site and the local communities with the visitor numbers. Adverse impacts through visitor overcrowding or congestion could lead to both physical damage to a site and degradation of its character and distinctiveness. The Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy would incorporate monitoring regimes and indicators by which visitor impact could be assessed and an optimal visitor capacity determined.
- A7.9 A number of studies are currently underway to support inward investment to Durham, for example the City Council's *'Planning for the Future of Durham'* and work commissioned by the Durham Partnership to develop retail, leisure and tourism to the City. Durham County Council is also in the process of updating their Tourism Strategy. Within the city, new hotels from national brands are planning to relocate to the city, and the Millennium City and Walkergate development is undergoing ongoing development, providing new opportunities for an increased and better-served tourism market. It would be important that such studies and developments work alongside the Durham WH Site Management Plan, in a manner that respects the Outstanding Universal Value and broader significances of the WH Site and ensures a co-ordinated approach to the development of the Durham tourist offer. The Visitor Management and Marketing Strategy proposed above could also link with, and support, these projects and strategies.

APPENDIX 8: DURHAM RIVERBANKS MANAGEMENT PLAN PROJECTS AT 2004

A8.1 Abbreviations

CoD	Durham County Council
DC	Durham Cathedral Chapter
DCA	Durham City Arts
CDC	City of Durham Council
UD	University of Durham

A8.2 Projects

Artist in Residence	DCA	Short term
Proposal to celebrate the cultural significance of the Riverbanks, promoted by Durham City Arts, with implementation in June 2004 planned.		
Light Flows Project	DCA	Medium term
Independent artistic interpretation of the banks at night using temporary light installations within a festival in November, implementation is November 2005 as pilot.		
Bird Boxes	DCA	Short term
Commission of an architect designed bird box on the banks. Implemented in 2005		
Riverbanks Gardens Project.....	CoD, St Johns.....	Short term
Proposal to implement a restoration and management plan for the hidden gardens, first phase funding secured, awaiting HLF submission. Aiming for start in early 2005.		
Riverbanks Erosion	St Johns CoD.....	Short term
River erosion is undermining public footpaths, as sustainable and low tech solution proposed, awaiting Environment Agency approval.		
Litter	All.....	ongoing
Phased and agreed litter picks, especially early spring, last in April 2004		
Rotary Club Shelter	UD	Medium term
Proposal to demolish the shelter, seeking appropriate funding or possible re-use.		

Proposed Otter Passes	CDC	Medium term
Aim to improve otter access above weirs by adding a ladder to the fish passes.		
Windy Gap Footpath improvements	CDC, UD	Medium term
Poor surface needs to be replaced with sealed surface.		
St Cuthberts Well.....	Chapter, CDC	Medium term
Landslip four years ago has still not consolidated. Aim to close footpath, retain well head in a planted copse to minimise inappropriate use		
Lighting	Chapter, UD, CDC, CoD	Medium term
Ongoing issue of lighting for evening use. Aim to use innovative approach to seek low level lighting solutions where possible without impinging on special character of the WHS.		
Corn Mill Proposals	Chapter	Medium term
Works to stabilised the former mill being developed		
Counts House.....	Chapter, CoD	Short term
Key to achieving start of the Riverbanks Gardens Project, included renovation.		
Proposed Pilgrims Walk	CoD CDC	Long term
Long distance path from Chester le Street with links to Cuthburt's journey further afield.		
Cycling on the riverbanks	Chapter, CDC	Long term
Seeking controls over access but allowing appropriate use.		
Riverbanks Seating / Street furniture	CoD	Ongoing
Memorial seats and maintaining quality of the stock.		
Giant Hogweed.....	CoD	Ongoing
Partnership project to eradicate this rank weed, aim to widen to other non native weeds.		
Viewpoints	Chapter	Medium term
Using arboricultural management to find ways to reopen historic vistas.		

APPENDIX 9: SELECT BIBLIOGRAPHY

Australia ICOMOS (1999): *Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Significance (The Burra Charter)*
www.icomos.org/australia/burra.html

Bath and North East Somerset Council (2003): *City of Bath WHS Management Plan 2003-2009*. Bath and North East Somerset Council and English Heritage

Bowen-Jones, H (1965): *An Atlas of Durham City*. Department of Geography: University of Durham.

Brown, Michelle P (undated): *Lindisfarne Gospels Virtual Seminars* British Library:
<http://www.bl.uk/whatson/exhibitions/lindisfarne/learning.html>

Clark, K (2001): *Informed Conservation*. English Heritage

DoE (1990): *Planning Policy Guidance Note 16: Archaeology and Planning*

DoE (1995): *World Heritage Convention Cultural Properties: UK Nomination Durham Cathedral and Castle*.

DoE and Department of National Heritage (1994): *Planning Policy Guidance Note 15: Planning and the Historic Environment*.

Durham Riverbanks Management Group (2002): *Durham Riverbanks Management Plan*

Ebbatson, Ellison, Lowther, Millet et al (1993): The City of Durham: An Archaeological Survey. In: *Durham Archaeological Journal Volume 9*

Fielden, Bernard M & Jokilehto, Jukka (1998): *Management Guidelines for World Heritage Sites* ICCROM

Hadrian's Wall World Heritage Site Management Plan Committee (2002): *Hadrian's Wall WHS Management Plan 2002-2007*. English Heritage

Historic Royal Palaces (2002): *Tower of London WHS Management Plan*. CBA and Historic Royal Palaces

ICOMOS (1964): *The Venice Charter: International Charter for the Conservation and Restoration of Monuments and Sites*

ICOMOS (1972): *Resolutions of the Symposium on the Introduction of Contemporary Architecture into Ancient Groups of Buildings.*

ICOMOS (1986): *ICOMOS Evaluation Report on Nomination of Durham Castle and Cathedral*

ICOMOS (1987): *Charter on the Conservation of Historic Towns and Urban Areas*

ICOMOS (1990): *Charter for the Protection and Management of the Archaeological Heritage*

ICOMOS (1999): *Charter for the Built Vernacular Heritage*

ICOMOS (1999): *Cultural Tourism Charter*

ICOMOS (2000): *Oxford Declaration on Landscape*

ICOMOS-UK (1995): *UK World Heritage Sites Monitoring Report*

ICOMOS-UK (undated): *Guidelines for the Definition of Boundaries for Candidate World Heritage Sites*

Marner, Dominic (2000): *St Cuthbert: His Life and Cult in Medieval Durham* London: British Library

Pocock, Douglas (ed) (1995): *St Cuthbert and Durham Cathedral: A Celebration.* Durham: City of Durham Trust

Pocock, Douglas (1999): *Durham: Essays on Sense of Place.* Durham: City of Durham Trust.

Roberts, Martin (2003): *Durham: 1000 Years of History.* Stroud: Tempus Publishing Ltd.

Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew (2002): *Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, WHS Management Plan.* CBA & Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew.

Stovel, H (1998): *Risk Preparedness: A Management Manual for World Cultural Heritage.* ICCROM, UNESCO, ICCOMOS, WHC

Stringer and Jones (2003): *Durham Castle: Repair of Fabric: Condition Survey for Repair*

UNESCO (undated): *Format for the Periodic Reporting on the Application of the World Heritage Convention Explanatory Notes.* <http://whc.unesco.org/reporting/prexpl.htm>

UNESCO (1972): *Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage.*
<http://whc.unesco.org/nwhc/pages/doc/main.htm>

UNESCO (2002): *World Heritage in Young Hands: An Education Resource Kit for Teachers* Paris: UNESCO

UNESCO / World Heritage Committee (2002 version): *Operational Guidelines for the Implementation of the World Heritage Site Convention.* <http://whc.unesco.org/nwhc/pages/doc/main.htm>

UNESCO / World Heritage Committee (2002): *Budapest Declaration on World Heritage.*
<http://whc.unesco.org/archive/02budapest-decl.htm>

Wheatley, G (1997): *World Heritage Sites - A Teacher's Guide.* English Heritage

APPENDIX 10: LOCAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

The Local Development Framework (LDF) is the new style development plan for the City of Durham district. It will gradually replace the current Local Plan and will cover the period 2006 to 2021. Until that time the Policies set out in paragraph 2.8.34 will be used by the local planning authority to deal with planning applications and other land use changes. Like the Local Plan the LDF will set out the policies that will be used to determine planning applications and it will also allocate land for development for specific uses. It will complement and build upon other plans and policies produced at national, regional and local level.

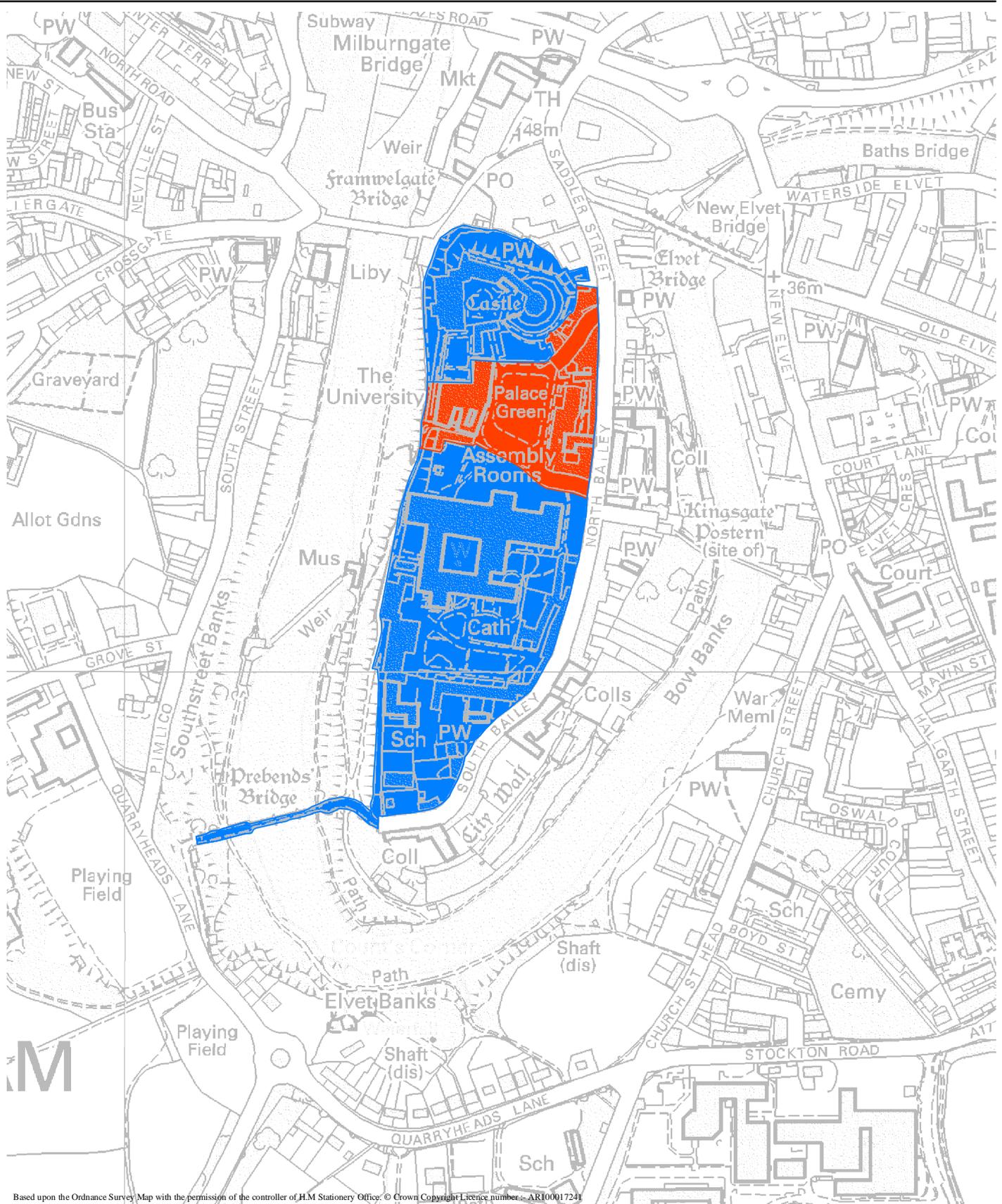
The LDF will consist of the following documents:

- Core Strategy
- Development Control Policies
- Planning for Housing
- Planning for Employment
- Planning for the City Centre and Retailing
- Planning for our Heritage
- Provision of Public Art in Major Developments
- Getting Involved in Planning (Statement of Community Involvement)

The Core Strategy will cover the strategic vision for the City of Durham and will contain policies on how to implement the key land-use planning aspects of the vision. This will include the protection and enhancement of the natural environment including the Green Belt and the general location for new development within the district. The Core Strategy will be a Development Plan Document.

Planning for the City Centre and Retailing Development Plan Document will allocate land in the City Centre for future development taking into account the Durham 2020 Vision project. It will also set out criteria for determining planning applications in the City Centre, district centres and local centres throughout the district.

The Planning for our Heritage Development Plan Document will set out the policies for the protection and enhancement of the district's historic environment. This DPD will have a direct relevance and link to this World Heritage Site Management Plan.



Based upon the Ordnance Survey Map with the permission of the controller of H.M Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright Licence number: AR100017241

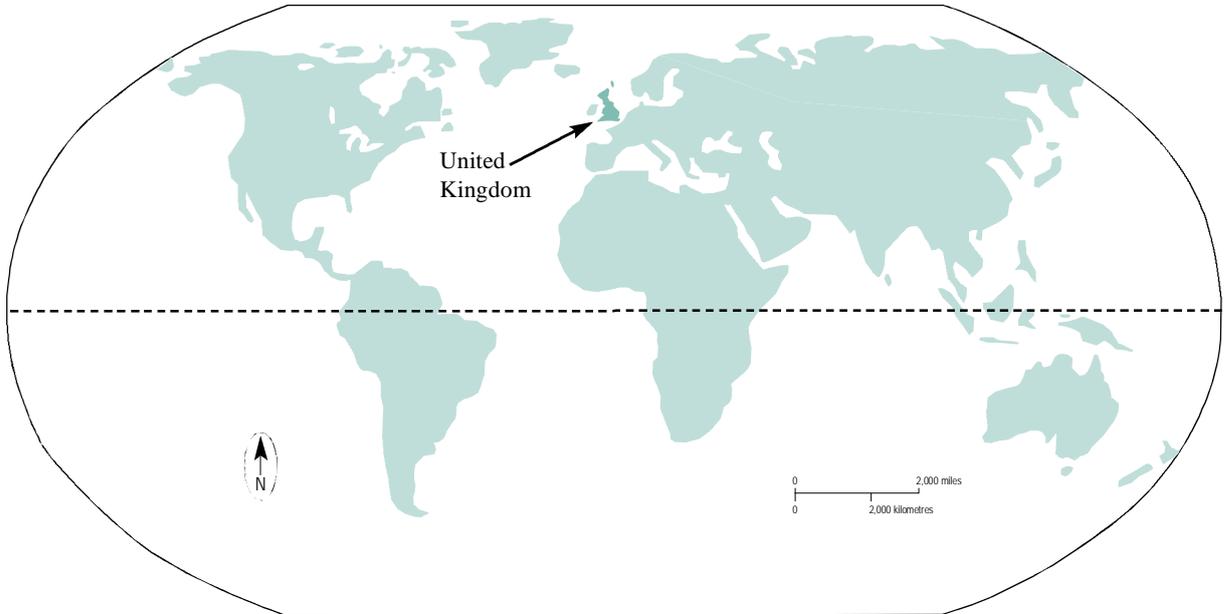
KEY

- Incribed WHS Site (1986)
- Proposed Addition to the WHS Site (2004)



**DURHAM
WHS MANAGEMENT
PLAN**

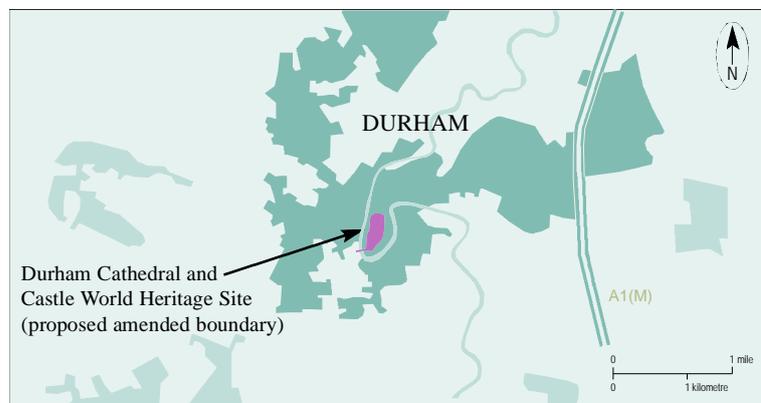
FIGURE 2.1
Incribed WHS Boundary (1986)
and Proposed Addition to the WHS
(2004)



The World - Highlighting the United Kingdom

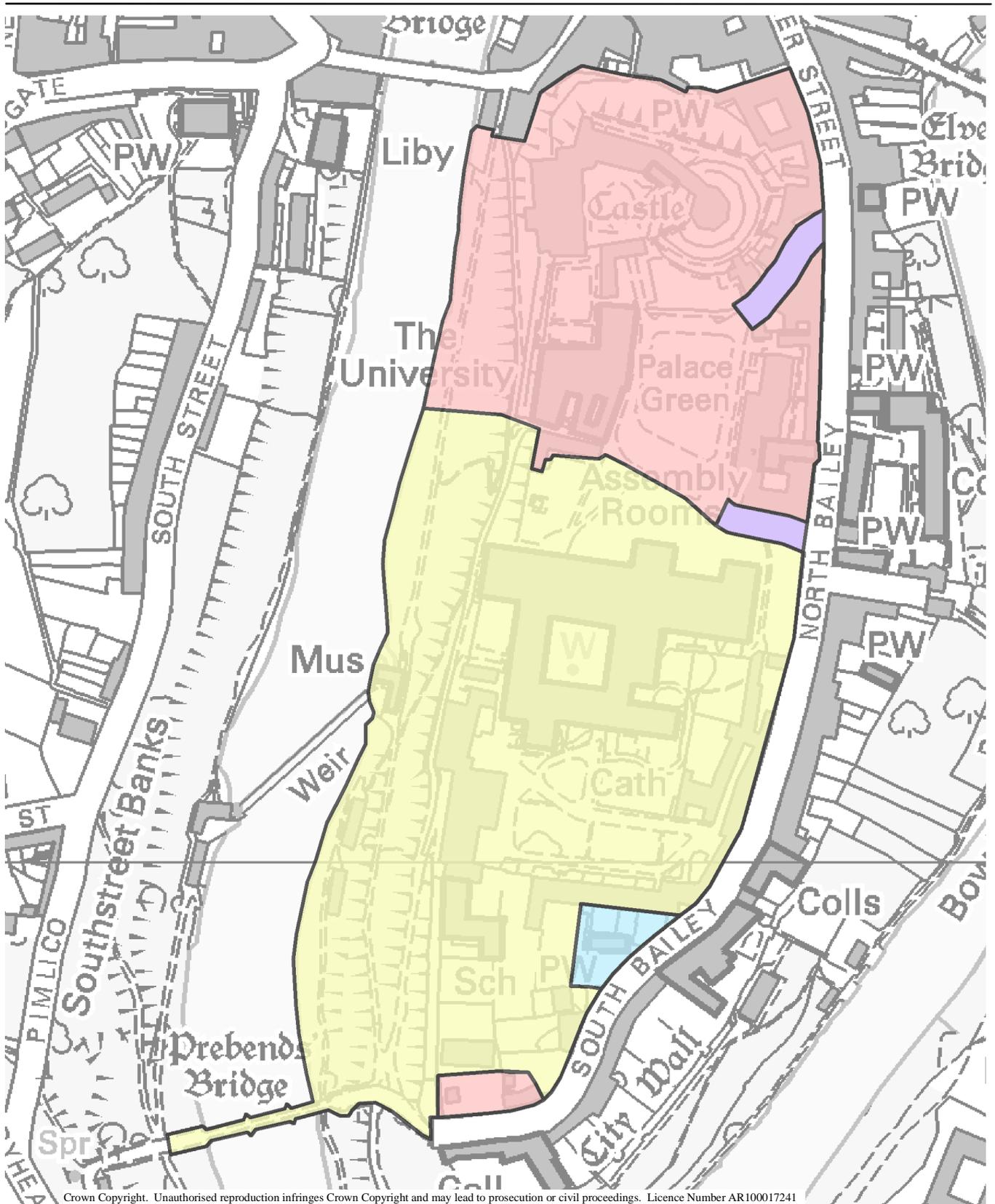


The United Kingdom - Highlighting Durham



Durham - Highlighting Location of World Heritage Site





KEY

- Chapter of Durham Cathedral
- City of Durham Council
- St John's College
- University of Durham

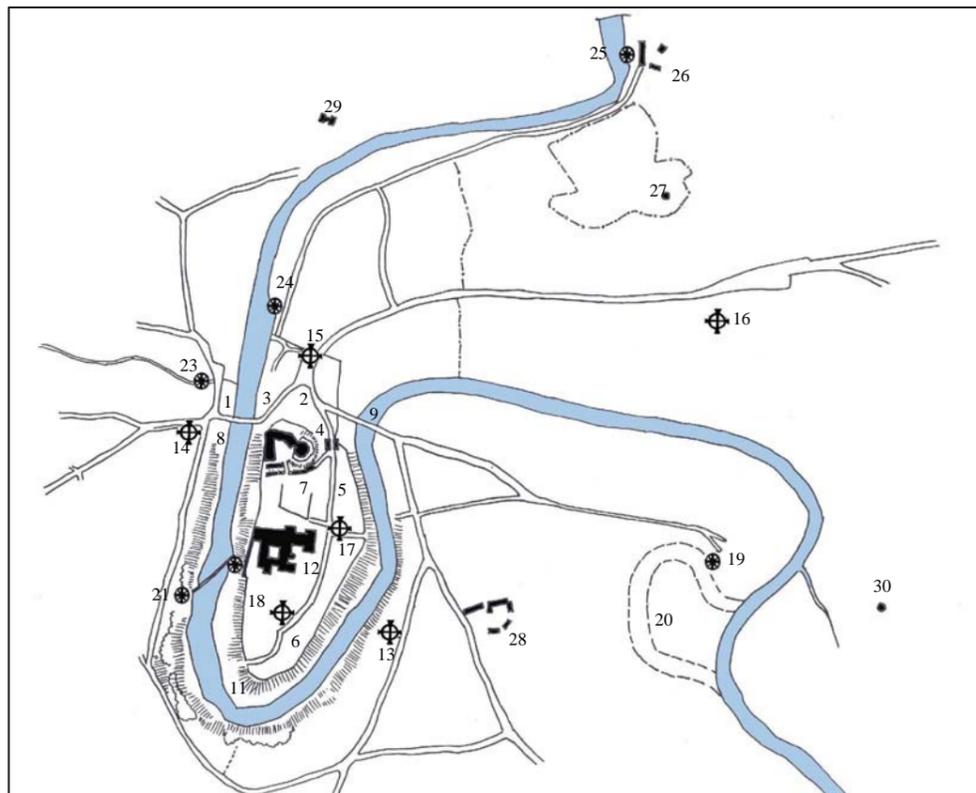


**DURHAM
WHS MANAGEMENT
PLAN**

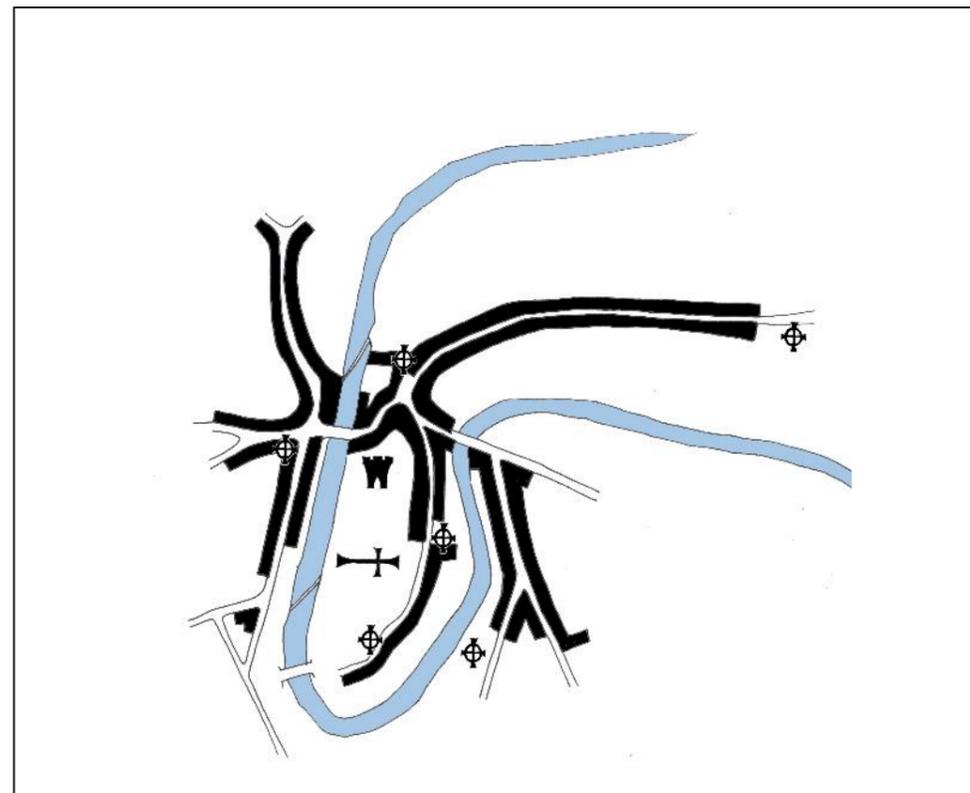
FIGURE 2.3
Ownership of the
World Heritage Site

KEY FOR FIGURE 1.1

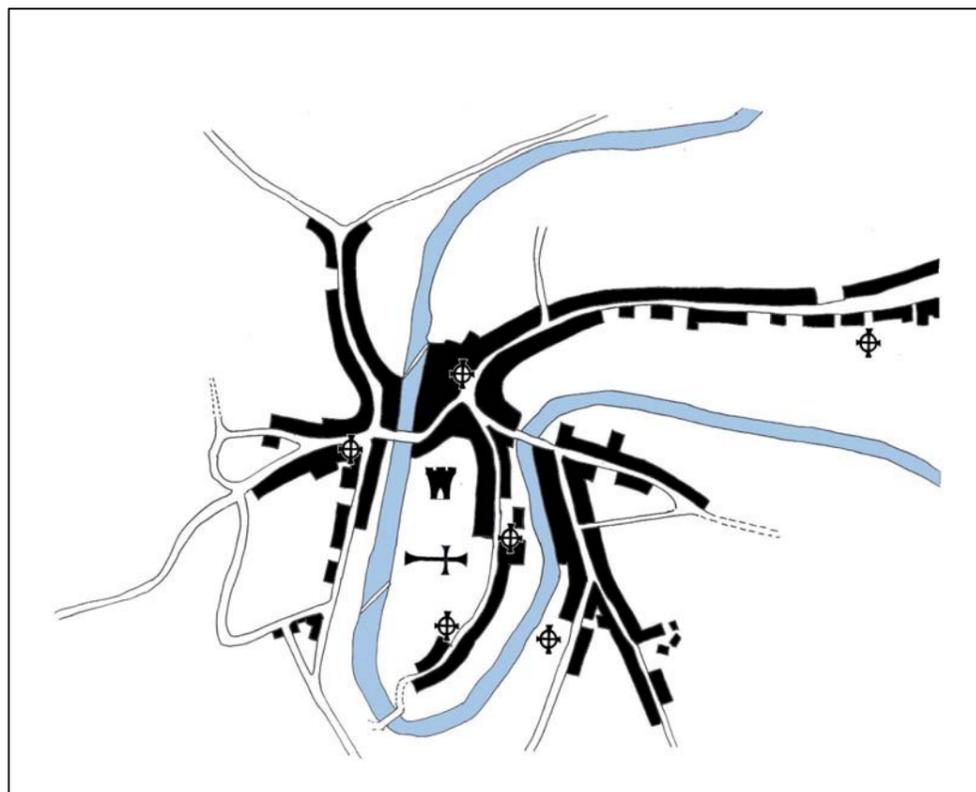
- STREETS**
KEY
 1 Milburngate
 2 Market Place
 3 Silver Street
 4 Saddler Street
 5 North Bailey
 6 South Bailey
 7 Palace Green
- BRIDGES**
 8 Framwellgate Bridge
 9 Elvet Bridge
 10 Bow Bridge
 11 Ford
- CHURCHES**
 12 Cathedral and Priory
 13 St Oswald
 14 St Margaret
 15 St Nicholas
 16 St Giles
 17 St Mary-Le-Bow
 18 St Mary-Le-Less
- MILLS**
 19 Skaltok Mill
 20 Former River Course
 21 South Street Mill
 22 Lead an Jesus Mills
 23 Clock Mill
 24 Bishops Mill
 25 Keping Mill
- OTHER SIGNIFICANT SITES**
 26 Keping Hospital
 27 St Mary Magdalene Hospital
 28 Elvet Hall Manor
 29 Crook Hall
 30 Old Durham



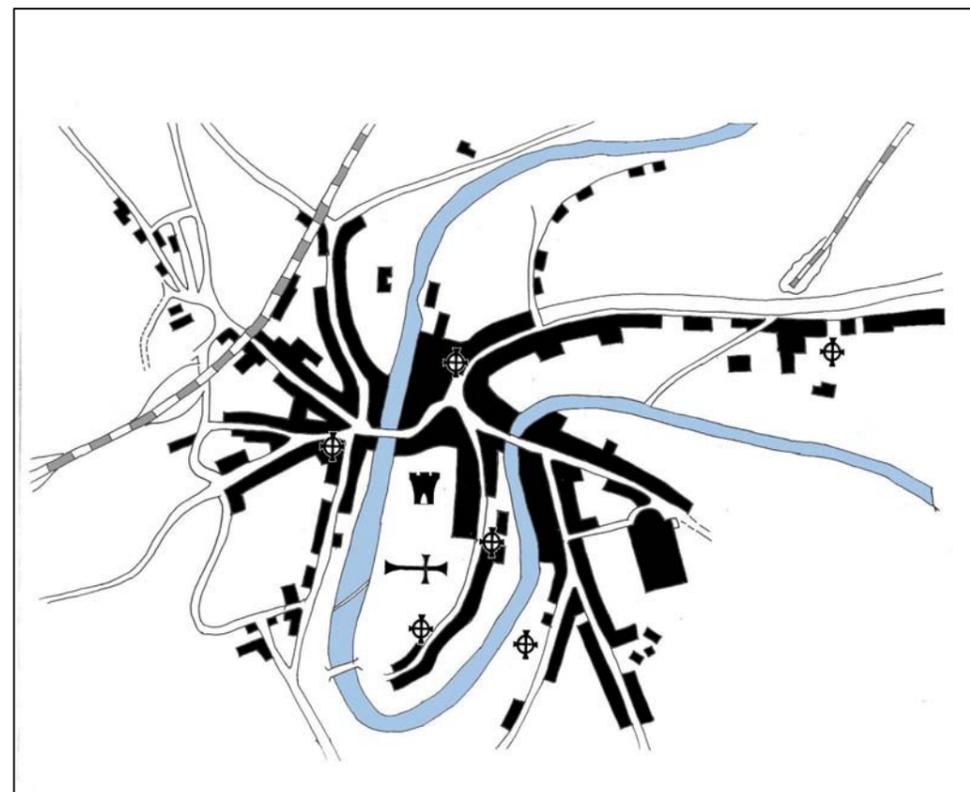
1.1 Durham in the Late Medieval
 Extracted from Martin Roberts (2003)



1.2 Durham in 1611 after Speed
 Extracted from H. Bowen-Jones (1965)



1.3 Durham in 1754 after Forster
 Extracted from H. Bowen-Jones (1965)



1.4 Durham in 1865 after Walker
 Extracted from H. Bowen-Jones (1965)

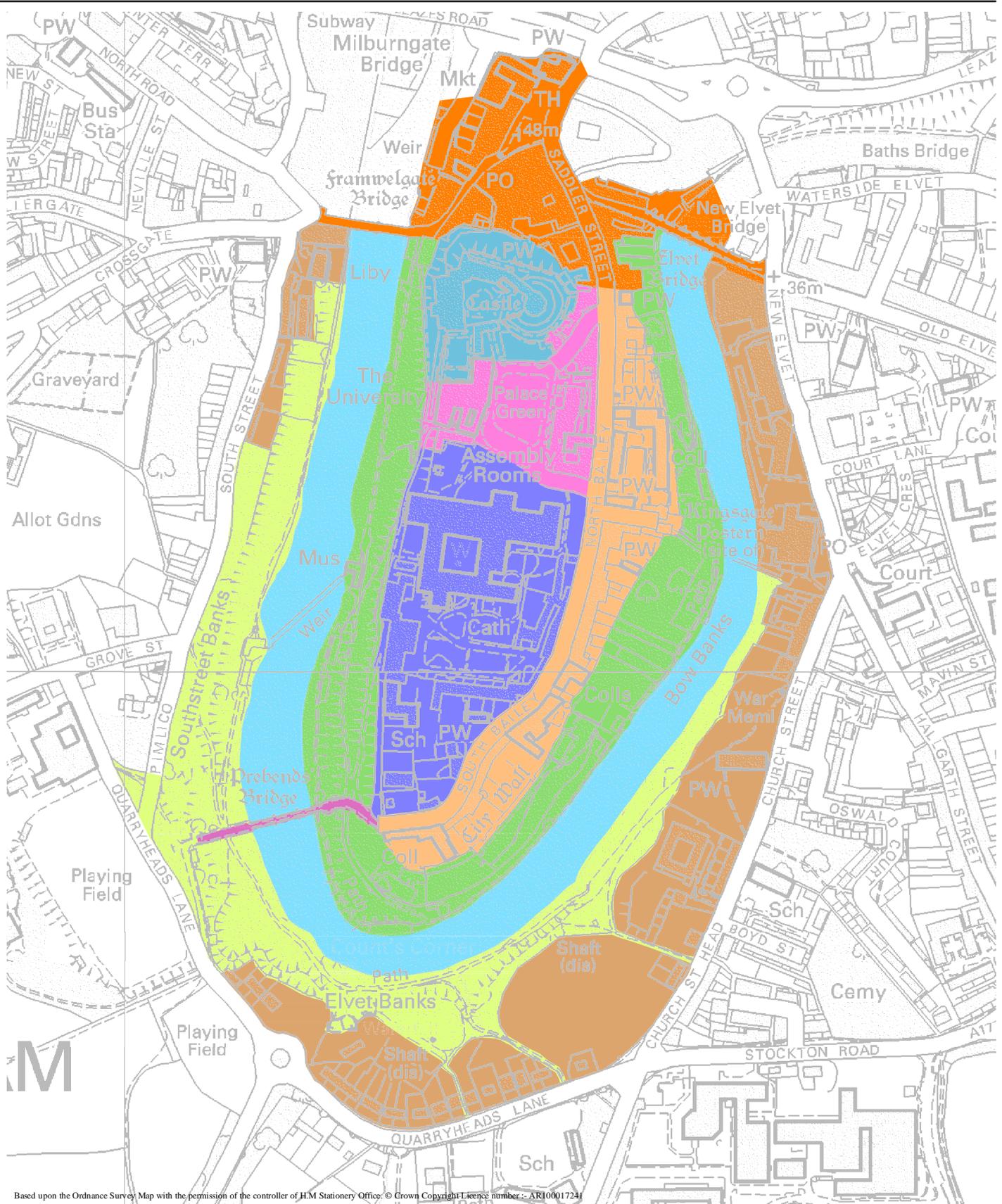
KEY FOR FIGURES 1.1-1.4

-  Castle
-  Cathedral
-  Mill
-  Church
-  Railway

PROJECT:

**DURHAM
 WHS MANAGEMENT
 PLAN**

**FIGURE 2.4
 Historical Development of
 Durham**



Based upon the Ordnance Survey Map with the permission of the controller of H.M. Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright Licence number: AR100017241

KEY

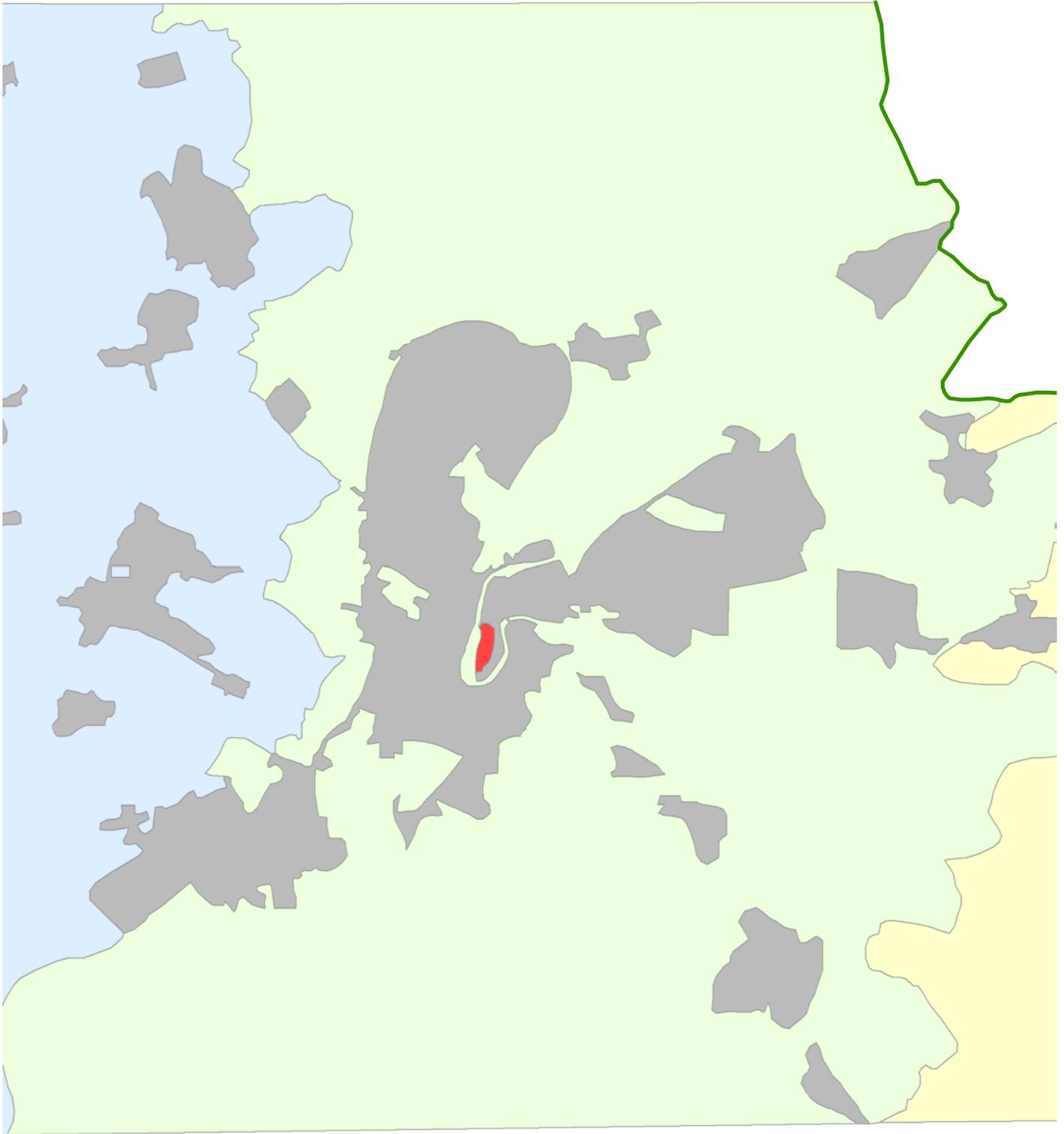
- | | | |
|--|--|---|
|  A - The Medieval Town Core |  D - The Cathedral and Cathedral Precinct |  H - The River Wear |
|  B - The Castle |  E - The Bailey |  I - The Outer Riverbanks Greenspace |
|  C - Palace Green |  F - The Peninsula Riverbanks |  J - The Outer Riverbanks Townscape |
| |  G - Prebends Bridge | |



**DURHAM
WHS MANAGEMENT
PLAN**

FIGURE 2.5

Components Areas of the WHS and its immediate Environs



Crown Copyright. Unauthorised reproduction infringes Crown Copyright and may lead to prosecution or civil proceedings. Licence Number AR100017241

KEY

- East Durham Limestone Plateau
- Wear Lowlands
- West Durham Coalfield
- World Heritage Site
- Urban
- County Boundary

[

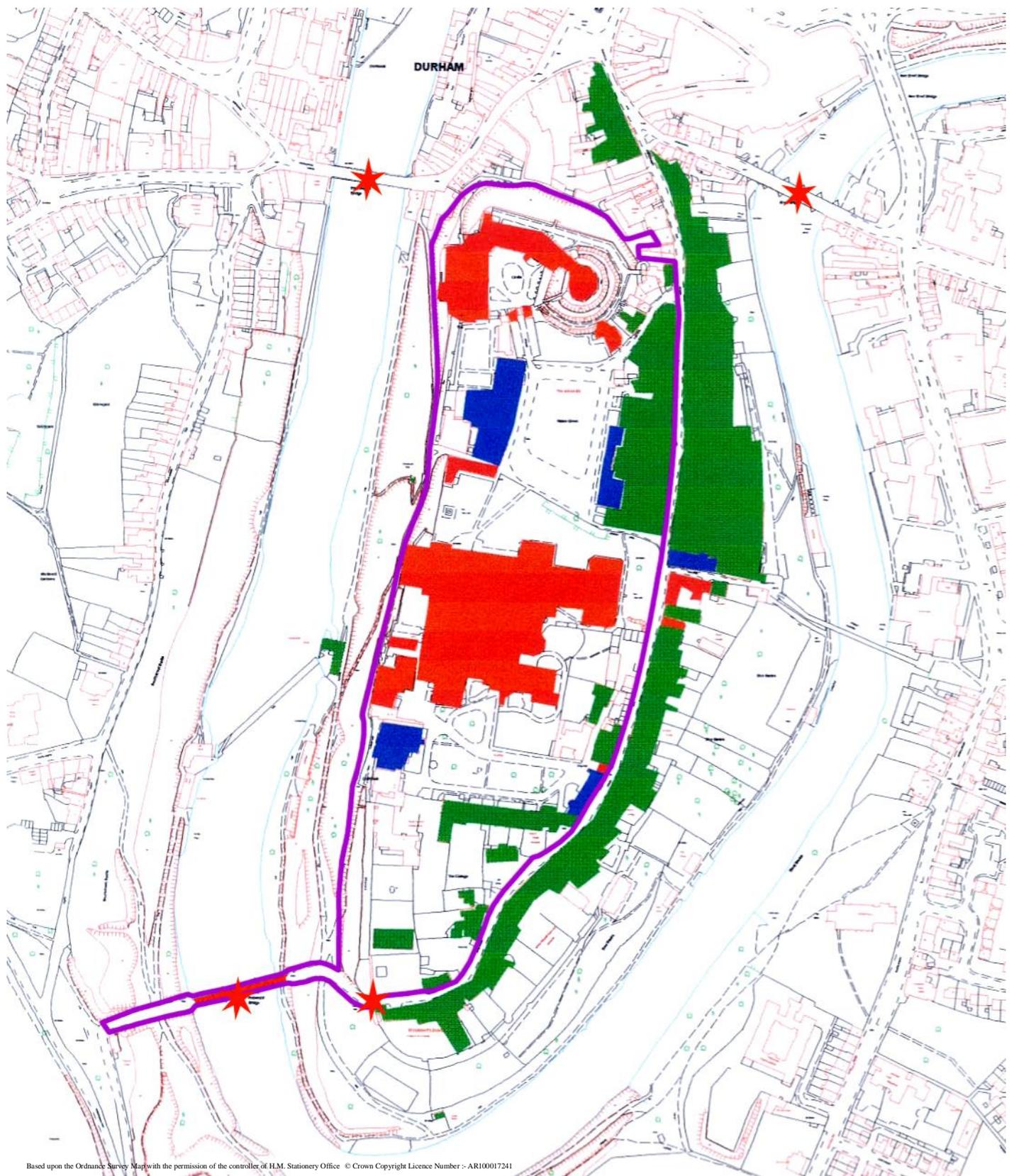
Figure 2.6

County Durham Landscape Character Areas

Durham World Heritage Site Management Plan

CHRIS BLANDFORD ASSOCIATES
Environment Landscape Planning





KEY

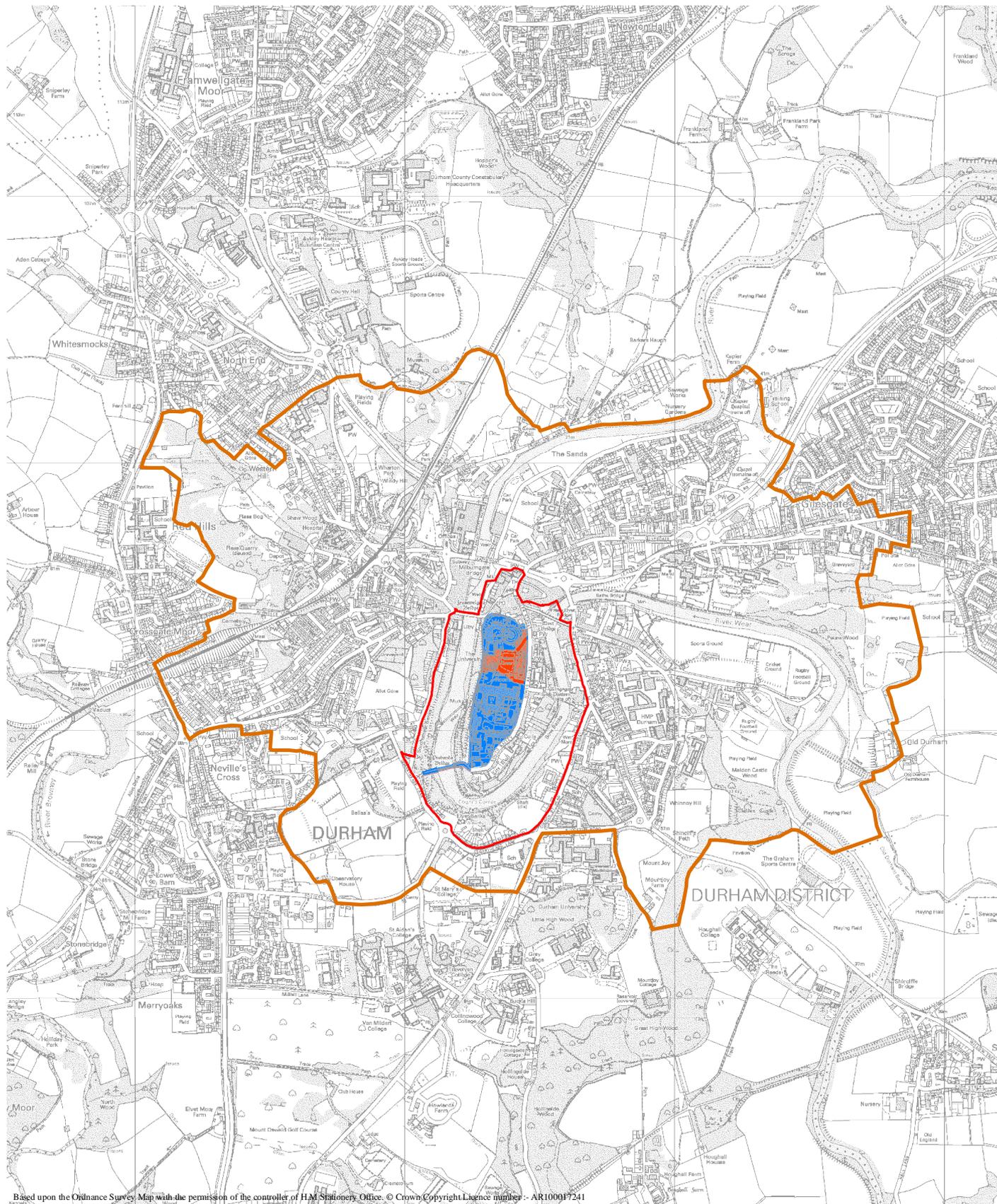
- | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|--------------------|---|--|--|
|  | Grade I Listed Building |  | Grade II Listed Building |  | Scheduled Monument |  | WHS Boundary (with proposed amendment) | Conservation Area - whole area contained within Durham (City Centre) |
|  | Grade II* Listed Building | | | | | | | Conservation Area (see Figure 2.10) |

H:\QTECH\11092401 Durham WHS\Quark Files\11092401 Figures\Quark.qxd



DURHAM CATHEDRAL AND CASTLE WHS MANAGEMENT PLAN

FIGURE 2.7
Listed Buildings and Scheduled Monuments



Based upon the Ordnance Survey Map with the permission of the controller of H.M. Stationery Office. © Crown Copyright Licence number: AR100017241

KEY

- | | |
|--|--|
|  Inscribed WHS Site (1986) |  Immediate Environs of the WHS |
|  Proposed Addition to the WHS Site (2004) |  Durham (City Centre) Conservation Area |



DURHAM WHS MANAGEMENT PLAN

FIGURE 2.8
Durham (City Centre)
Conservation Area



London Office

*Swan Court 9 Tanner Street London SE1 3LE
Tel: 0207 089 6480 Fax: 0207 089 9260 Email: mail@cba.uk.net*

South East Office

*The Old Crown High Street Blackboys Uckfield East Sussex TN22 5JR
Tel: 01825 891071 Fax: 01825 891075 Email: mail@cba.uk.net*